



Simulator Configuration Guide for Synopsys Models

To search the entire manual set, press this toolbar button.
For help, refer to [intro.pdf](#).



Copyright © 2001 Synopsys, Inc.
All rights reserved.
Printed in USA.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice.

SmartModel, ModelAccess, ModelTools, SourceModel Library, LM-1200, and Synopsys Eaglei are registered trademarks; MemPro, MemSpec, MemScope, FlexModel, LM-family, LM-1400, Logic Model, ModelSource, and SourceModel are trademarks of Synopsys, Inc.

All company and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Contents

Preface	11
About This Manual	11
Related Documents	11
Some Hyperlinks May Not Work	12
Manual Overview	12
Typographical and Symbol Conventions	13
Getting Help	14
The Synopsys Website	15
Synopsys Common Licensing (SCL) Document Set	15
Comments?	16
Chapter 1	
Using Synopsys Models with Simulators	17
Overview	17
Using SmartModels with SWIFT Simulators	18
SmartModel SWIFT Parameters	18
Instantiating SmartModels	20
The SWIFT Command Channel	21
Fault Simulations	23
Using FlexModels with SWIFT Simulators	24
flexm_setup Command Reference	25
Instantiating FlexModels with Direct C Control	26
Using MemPro Models with VHDL and Verilog Simulators	29
Using MemPro Models with VHDL Simulators	31
Using MemPro Models with Verilog Simulators	31
Instantiating MemPro Models	32
Controlling MemPro Model Messages	33
Controlling MemPro Message Output	34
Message Level Constants	34
Using Hardware Models with Different Simulators	35
Linking Other Supported Simulators	35
Chapter 2	
Using VCS with Synopsys Models	37
Overview	37
Setting Environment Variables	38

Using SmartModels with VCS	39
Using FlexModels with VCS	41
VCS FlexModel Examples	45
Script for Running FlexModel Examples in VCS	48
Example Simulator Run Script	50
Using MemPro Models with VCS	50
Using Hardware Models with VCS	54
Example Using Runtime Option	56
Example Using DelayRange Parameter	56
VCS Utilities	56
Chapter 3	
Using Verilog-XL with Synopsys Models	59
Overview	59
Setting Environment Variables	59
Using SmartModels with Verilog-XL	61
Static Linking with LMTV	62
Verilog-XL Usage Notes for SmartModels	62
Using FlexModels with Verilog-XL	78
FlexModels:PLI Static Linking with LMTV	80
Using MemPro Models with Verilog-XL	80
Verilog-XL Static Linking with MemPro Models	81
Verilog-XL Dynamic Linking with MemPro Models	83
Using Hardware Models with Verilog-XL	85
Prerequisites	85
Using Hardware Models	87
\$lm_log_test_vectors Command Reference	96
\$lm_loop_instance Command Reference	97
\$lm_timing_information Command Reference	98
\$lm_timing_measurements Command Reference	98
\$lm_unknowns Command Reference	99
lmvsg Command Reference	101
Chapter 4	
Using NC-Verilog with Synopsys Models	103
Overview	103
Setting Environment Variables	103
Using SmartModels with NC-Verilog	105
Static Linking with LMTV	106
Using FlexModels with NC-Verilog	106
Static Linking with LMTV	108

Using MemPro Models with NC-Verilog on UNIX	109
Using Hardware Models with NC-Verilog	111
NC-Verilog Utilities	111
Chapter 5	
Using MTI Verilog with Synopsys Models	113
Overview	113
Setting Environment Variables	113
Using SmartModels with MTI Verilog	115
Static Linking with LMTV	116
Using FlexModels with MTI Verilog	116
Static Linking with LMTV	119
Using MemPro Models with MTI Verilog	119
Using Hardware Models with MTI Verilog	120
MTI Verilog Utilities	122
Chapter 6	
Using Scirocco with Synopsys Models	125
Overview	125
Setting Environment Variables	126
Using SmartModels with Scirocco	127
create_smartmodel_lib Command Reference	128
Using FlexModels with Scirocco	129
Script for Running FlexModel Examples in Scirocco	132
Using MemPro Models with Scirocco	134
Using MemPro Models in a Testbench	136
Using Hardware Models with Scirocco	137
Scirocco Example with TILS299 Hardware Model	137
Scirocco Utilities	138
VHDL Model Generics with Scirocco	138
Chapter 7	
Using VSS with Synopsys Models	143
Overview	143
Setting Environment Variables	143
Using SmartModels with VSS	145
create_smartmodel_lib Command Reference	146
Using FlexModels with VSS	147
Using MemPro Models with VSS	150
Using Hardware Models with VSS	152
VSS Example with TILS299 Hardware Model	152

VSS Utilities	153
VHDL Model Generics with VSS	153
Chapter 8	
Using MTI VHDL with Synopsys Models	157
Overview	157
Setting Environment Variables	157
Using SmartModels with MTI VHDL	159
sm_entity Command Reference	162
Using FlexModels with MTI VHDL	162
Using MemPro Models with MTI VHDL	165
Using Hardware Models with MTI VHDL	167
MTI VHDL Example Using TILS299 Hardware Model	168
hm_entity Command Reference	169
MTI VHDL Utilities	171
Chapter 9	
Using Cyclone with Synopsys Models	173
Overview	173
Setting Environment Variables	173
Using SmartModels with Cyclone	175
Using FlexModels with Cyclone	175
Using MemPro Models with Cyclone	175
Using Hardware Models with Cyclone	176
ModelSource System Hardware and Software	177
LM-1400/LM-family System Hardware and Software	177
Configuration Options	177
Cyclone User Setup	180
Using Hardware Models with Cycle-Based Simulators	184
genInterface Command Reference	188
Cyclone Simulation	190
Cyclone genInterface Setup Files	192
Cyclone genInterface Processing	193
Chapter 10	
Using Leapfrog with Synopsys Models	197
Overview	197
Setting Environment Variables	197
Using SmartModels with Leapfrog	199
Using FlexModels with Leapfrog	200
Using MemPro Models with Leapfrog	200

Using Hardware Models with Leapfrog	203
Leapfrog Example with TILS299 Hardware Model	203
Leapfrog Utilities	204
Chapter 11	
Using NC-VHDL with Synopsys Models	207
Overview	207
Setting Environment Variables	207
Using SmartModels with NC-VHDL	208
Using FlexModels with NC-VHDL	210
Using MemPro Models with NC-VHDL	212
Using Hardware Models with NC-VHDL	215
NC-VHDL Example with TILS299 Hardware Model	215
NC-VHDL Utilities	216
Chapter 12	
Using QuickSim II with Synopsys Models	219
Overview	219
Setting Environment Variables	219
Using SmartModels and FlexModels with QuickSim II	221
Installing the QuickSim II SWIFT Interface	221
Using SmartModels/FlexModels with QuickSim II	223
Schematic Capture	223
Logic Simulation	230
Custom Symbols	241
Using Hardware Models with QuickSim II	246
Setting up Hardware Models in QuickSim II	247
Using Hardware Models in QuickSim II	249
Model Registration	251
Registering a Model with lm_model	252
Modifying a Hardware Model	257
Simulating with Hardware Models in QuickSim II	258
lm_model Command Reference	266
tmg_to_ts Command Reference	269
Appendix A	
Using VERA with FlexModels	271
Overview	271
Using FlexModels with the VERA UDF Interface	272
Linking VERA with Verilog Simulators	273
Linking VERA with the MTI VHDL Simulator	273

Creating a VERA Testbench	273
VERA Testbench Example	274
Incorporating FlexModels in a VERA Testbench	276
Using VERA with VCS	277
Appendix B	
LMTV Command Reference	281
Overview	281
LMTV Command Line Switches	281
LMTV Commands	283
\$lm_command() or \$lai_command()	284
\$lm_dump_file() or \$lai_dump_file()	285
\$lm_help()	286
\$lm_load_file() or \$lai_load_file()	287
\$lm_monitor_enable() or \$lai_enable_monitor()	288
\$lm_monitor_disable() or \$lai_disable_monitor()	288
\$lm_monitor_vec_map() and \$lm_monitor_vec_unmap()	290
\$lm_status() or \$lai_status()	292
Index	293

Figures

Figure 1:	run_flex_examples_in_vcs.pl Script	49
Figure 2:	Verilog-XL Design Flow	66
Figure 3:	Concept Design Flow	68
Figure 4:	The ma_verilog Software Tree	86
Figure 5:	SFI Communication with PLI	87
Figure 6:	run_flex_examples_in_scirocco.pl Script	133
Figure 7:	Cyclone Configuration Guidelines	179
Figure 8:	ModelAccess for Cyclone Installation Tree	180
Figure 9:	Process Flow Chart	182
Figure 10:	Slang Hardware Model Conceptual Diagram	185
Figure 11:	Default synopsys_lm_hw.setup File	186
Figure 12:	Sample System-Dependent Setup File (.synopsys_lm_hw.setup.hp700)	193
Figure 13:	Sample Pin and Bus Symbols	224
Figure 14:	Visible Symbol Properties	225
Figure 15:	National Semiconductor DP8429 DRAM Controller	244
Figure 16:	Bus and Pin Symbols	246
Figure 17:	Sample Component Interface for a Hardware Model	250
Figure 18:	Hardware Model Registration	252

Tables

Table 1:	SmartModel SWIFT Parameters	19
Table 2:	FlexModel SWIFT Parameters	24
Table 3:	FlexModel Direct C Control Files	27
Table 4:	MemPro Generic/Parameter Descriptions	30
Table 5:	MemPro Supported Simulators	31
Table 6:	MemPro Message Constant Descriptions	34
Table 7:	VCS SmartModel Explanation	41
Table 8:	FlexModel VCS Verilog Files	42
Table 9:	VCS With One FlexModel On Solaris Model Explanation	46
Table 10:	VCS MemPro Model Explanation	53
Table 11:	Characteristics of Historic and SWIFT SmartModel Modes	63
Table 12:	model.v Directories	64
Table 13:	LMTV/SWIFT and Verilog-XL-specific Libraries	75
Table 14:	FlexModel Verilog-XL Files	78
Table 15:	Test Vector Symbols	95
Table 16:	FlexModel NC-Verilog Files	106
Table 17:	FlexModel MTI Verilog Files	116
Table 18:	FlexModel Scirocco VHDL Files	130
Table 19:	FlexModel VSS VHDL Files	148
Table 20:	FlexModel MTI VHDL Files	163
Table 21:	Rules for Special Character Mapping	194
Table 22:	FlexModel NC-VHDL Files	210
Table 23:	Symbol Properties used by SWIFT Models	225
Table 24:	Symbol Properties Required for Simulation	226
Table 25:	Optional Symbol Properties	227
Table 26:	Signal State Values	231
Table 27:	QuickSim II Command Interaction	233
Table 28:	Elements in a TIBPAL22V10 Device	239
Table 29:	Mentor Graphics Vendor CPU Operating System Suffixes	247
Table 30:	Sample Component Directory	253
Table 31:	Shell Software to Technology File Conversion	256
Table 32:	Signal Instance Command Summary	259
Table 33:	FlexModel Files Containing VERA UDF Information	272
Table 34:	VERA Header Files	273
Table 35:	FlexModel VERA Files	276

Preface

About This Manual

This manual contains procedures for using Synopsys models with the most widely used simulators. The scope includes the following types of models:

- SmartModels (including FlexModels)
- MemPro Models
- Hardware Models

Note that this manual contains illustrations of third-party software files solely to demonstrate the end user modifications needed to get Synopsys models working with these tools. Third-party software changes frequently. Refer to the third-party tool vendor's documentation for definitive information about their licensed software.

Related Documents

For more information about SmartModels (including FlexModels), or to navigate to a related online document, refer to the [Guide to SmartModel Documentation](#). For information on supported platforms and simulators, refer to [SmartModel Library Supported Simulators and Platforms](#).

For detailed information about specific SmartModels (including FlexModels), use the Browser tool (`$LMC_HOME/bin/sl_browser`) to access the online model datasheets.

For more information about MemPro, or to navigate to a related online document, refer to the [Guide to MemPro Documentation](#).

For more information about hardware models, or to navigate to a related online document, refer to the [Guide to Hardware Model Documents](#).

Some Hyperlinks May Not Work

Because this manual is included with multiple product documentation sets, some hyperlinks do not work properly in all cases. For example, hyperlinks from this manual to other books in the hardware model documentation set will only work from a hardware model installation tree. Similarly, hyperlinks to other books installed in \$LMC_HOME will only work in that location.

To work around this limitation, you can visit the Synopsys Web site and navigate to the latest documentation for all Synopsys models:

<http://www.synopsys.com/products/lm/doc>

Manual Overview

This manual contains the following chapters:

Preface	Describes the manual and lists the typographical conventions and symbols used in it. Tells how to get technical assistance.
Chapter 1 Using Synopsys Models with Simulators	Basic information for configuring and instantiating SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models for use in hardware simulators.
Chapter 2 Using VCS with Synopsys Models	How to configure SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models for use with VCS. Includes a script that you can use to run FlexModel example testbenches in VCS.
Chapter 3 Using Verilog-XL with Synopsys Models	How to configure SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models for use with Verilog-XL.
Chapter 4 Using NC-Verilog with Synopsys Models	How to configure SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models for use with NC-Verilog.
Chapter 5 Using MTI Verilog with Synopsys Models	How to configure SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models for use with MTI Verilog.
Chapter 6 Using Scirocco with Synopsys Models	How to configure SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models for use with Scirocco. Includes a script that you can use to run FlexModel example testbenches in Scirocco.
Chapter 7 Using VSS with Synopsys Models	How to configure SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models for use with VSS.

Chapter 8 Using MTI VHDL with Synopsys Models	How to configure SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models for use with MTI VHDL.
Chapter 9 Using Cyclone with Synopsys Models	How to configure MemPro models and hardware models for use with Cyclone.
Chapter 10 Using Leapfrog with Synopsys Models	How to configure SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models for use with Leapfrog.
Chapter 11 Using NC-VHDL with Synopsys Models	How to configure SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models for use with NC-VHDL.
Chapter 12 Using QuickSim II with Synopsys Models	How to configure SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models for use with QuickSim II.
Appendix A Using VERA with FlexModels	How to configure FlexModels for use with Vera. Includes a separate procedure for using FlexModels with Vera and VCS.
Appendix B LMTV Command Reference	Reference information for LMTV commands used with SmartModels and FlexModels on Verilog-XL, NC-Verilog, and MTI Verilog.

Typographical and Symbol Conventions

- **Default UNIX prompt**

Represented by a percent sign (%).

- **User input** (text entered by the user)

Shown in **bold** type, as in the following command line example:

```
% cd $LMC_HOME/hdl
```

- **System-generated text** (prompts, messages, files, reports)

Shown as in the following system message:

```
No Mismatches: 66 Vectors processed: 66 Possible
```

- **Variables** for which you supply a specific value

Shown in italic type, as in the following command line example:

```
% setenv LMC_HOME prod_dir
```

In this example, you substitute a specific name for *prod_dir* when you enter the command.

- Command syntax

Choice among alternatives is shown with a vertical bar (|) as in the following syntax example:

```
-effort_level low | medium | high
```

In this example, you must choose one of the three possibilities: low, medium, or high.

Optional parameters are enclosed in square brackets ([]) as in the following syntax example:

```
pin1 [pin2 ... pinN]
```

In this example, you must enter at least one pin name (*pin1*), but others are optional (*[pin2 ... pinN]*).

Getting Help

If you have a question while using Synopsys products, use the following resources:

1. Start with the available product documentation installed on your network or located at the root level of your Synopsys CD-ROM. Every documentation set contains overview information in the [intro.pdf](#) file.

Additional Synopsys documentation is available at this URL:

<http://www.synopsys.com/products/lm/doc>

Datasheets for models are available using the Model Directory:

<http://www.synopsys.com/products/lm/modelDir.html>

2. Visit the online Support Center at this URL:

<http://www.synopsys.com/support/lm/support.html>

This site gives you access to the following resources:

- SOLV-IT!, the Synopsys automated problem resolution system
- product-specific FAQs (frequently asked questions)
- lists of supported simulators and platforms
- the ability to open a support help call
- the ability to submit a delivery request for some product lines

3. If you still have questions, you can call the Support Center:

North American customers:

Call the Synopsys EagleI and Logic Modeling Products Support Center hotline at 1-800-445-1888 (or 1-503-748-6920) from 6:30 AM to 5 PM Pacific Time, Monday through Friday.

International customers:

Call your local sales office.

The Synopsys Website

General information about Synopsys and its products is available at this URL:

<http://www.synopsys.com>

Synopsys Common Licensing (SCL) Document Set

Synopsys common licensing (SCL) software is delivered on a CD that is separate from the tools that use this software to authorize their use. The SCL documentation set includes the following publications, which are located in (root)/docs/scl on the SCL CD and also available on the Synopsys FTP server (<ftp://ftp.synopsys.com>):

- *Licensing QuickStart*—(142K PDF file)
This booklet provides instructions for obtaining an electronic copy of your license key file and for installing and configuring SCL on UNIX and Windows NT.
- *Licensing Installation and Administration Guide*—(2.08M PDF file)
This guide provides information about installation and configuration, key concepts, examples of license key files, migration to SCL, maintenance, and troubleshooting.

You can find general SCL information on the Web at:

<http://www.synopsys.com/keys>

Comments?

To report errors or make suggestions, please send e-mail to:

doc@synopsys.com

To report an error on a specific page, select the entire page (including headers and footers), and copy to the buffer. Then paste the buffer to the body of your e-mail message. This will provide us with the information we need to correct the problem.

1

Using Synopsys Models with Simulators

Overview

There are a variety of different types of models used in the verification process. This manual covers the following kinds:

- SmartModels (including FlexModels)
- MemPro models
- Hardware models

SmartModels and FlexModels are binary behavioral models that connect to over 30 commercial simulators through the SWIFT interface. If you are using a SWIFT simulator that does not have a separate chapter devoted to it in this manual, refer to this chapter for the basic information needed to get the models working on your simulator. For information on SmartModel/FlexModel supported simulators, refer to the [SmartModel Library Supported Platforms and Simulators Manual](#).

MemPro models are produced in Verilog or VHDL and do not use the SWIFT interface. They do require simulator-specific PLI/CLI/FLI code that needs to be bound in to the supported simulator executable. MemPro is supported on the simulators listed in [Table 5](#).

The hardware modeler uses real silicon in combination with specialized hardware and software to represent the full functionality of modeled devices in your simulation. It does not have a standard interface comparable to SWIFT. Hardware models are a combination of hardware and software, as follows:

- The hardware consists of the actual silicon of the device being modeled, installed on a special-purpose Device Adapter and inserted into the hardware modeling system.

- The software consists of a series of ASCII files containing Shell Software that describes the device interface and initialization, along with optional information such as timing delays, state tracking, and timing checks.

For simulator-specific information about using hardware models, refer first to [“Using Hardware Models with Different Simulators”](#) on page 35 for an overview and then consult the appropriate simulator-specific chapter in this manual for detailed setup procedures.

The procedures in this chapter are organized into the following major sections:

- [“Using SmartModels with SWIFT Simulators”](#) on page 18
- [“Using FlexModels with SWIFT Simulators”](#) on page 24
- [“Using MemPro Models with VHDL and Verilog Simulators”](#) on page 29
- [“Using Hardware Models with Different Simulators”](#) on page 35

Using SmartModels with SWIFT Simulators

SWIFT is a standard EDA event-level simulation interface developed by Synopsys. The SWIFT interface enables multiple simulators with different requirements to use models from the same SmartModel Library. Each simulator provides a standard model interface, specified by SWIFT, that allows it to load the same SmartModel Library.

When the simulator encounters a SmartModel during simulation, it uses a set of SWIFT functions to create and configure the model, map to its ports, initialize it, and set its time units. The SWIFT interface also allows participating simulators to integrate the SmartModel Library into their particular framework, including application-specific menus. For more information, refer to the documentation provided by your simulator vendor.

SmartModel SWIFT Parameters

SmartModel attributes or parameters are model-specific values needed by the simulator to configure a model. You configure SmartModels when you instantiate them in your design using these SWIFT parameters. This could take the form of Verilog defparams, VHDL generics, or symbol properties, depending on the simulator you are using. For details, refer to the documentation for your simulator.

Table 1 lists the SmartModel configuration parameters. All SmartModels require an InstanceName, TimingVersion, and DelayRange. In addition, some SmartModels need a MemoryFile, JEDECFile, SCFFile, or PCLFile attribute. FlexModels use a slightly different set of attributes for configuration, described in “[FlexModel SWIFT Parameters](#)” on page 24.

Table 1: SmartModel SWIFT Parameters

Parameter Name	Used By	Description
InstanceName	All SmartModels	Specifies an instance name for a particular instance of a SmartModel. Used in messages to indicate which instance is issuing the message; also used in user-defined timing. Can be set by the simulator from the hierarchical name in the HDL description; or can be set using the InstanceName property on the symbol.
TimingVersion	All SmartModels	Specifies the timing version a SmartModel instance should use when scheduling changes on its outputs or checking setup and hold times on its inputs. The allowed values are “min,” “typ,” and “max.”
DelayRange	All SmartModels	Specifies a propagation delay range for a particular instance of a SmartModel.
MemoryFile	SmartModels with internal memory such as RAMs, ROMs, and processors and controllers that have on-chip RAM or ROM.	Specifies a memory image file (MIF) to load for a particular instance of a SmartModel.
JEDECFile	JEDEC-based PAL and PLD models	Specifies a JEDEC file to load for a particular instance of a SmartModel.
SCFFile	FPGAs and CPLDs	Specifies a model command file (MCF) to load for a particular instance of a SmartModel.

Table 1: SmartModel SWIFT Parameters (Continued)

Parameter Name	Used By	Description
PCLFile	Processor models (for example, microprocessors and microcontrollers); these are usually hardware verification models.	Specifies a compiled PCL program file to load for a particular instance of a SmartModel.

**Note**

To determine the required configuration file (i.e., MemoryFile, JEDECFile, SCFFFile, or PCLFile) for any SmartModel, refer to the model's datasheet.

Instantiating SmartModels

If you are using an HDL-based simulator, generate a model wrapper file (*model.v* or *model.vhd*) using your simulator vendor's procedure. Use the model wrapper to instantiate the model in your design. The model wrapper must map the model's ports to signals in your design. Modify SWIFT parameters in the model wrapper as needed. Here are some parameter examples for a SmartModel memory model:

VHDL:

```
U1: cyc7150
  GENERIC MAP(
    TimingVersion => "cy7c150",
    DelayRange => "MAX",
    MemoryFile => "mem1";
```

Verilog:

```
defparam
  u1.TimingVersion = "cy7c150",
  u1.DelayRange = "MAX",
  u1.MemoryFile = "mem1";
```

You can also instantiate SmartModels in schematic-capture based systems by using model symbols and attaching values to symbol properties. For details on instantiating SmartModels using symbols with QuickSim II, refer to [“Using QuickSim II with Synopsys Models” on page 219](#).

The SWIFT Command Channel

The SWIFT interface specification requires that simulator vendors include a minimal command interface to the SmartModel Library. This interface is called the command channel. The command channel supports several types of commands:

- [“Model Commands” on page 21](#)
- [“SmartBrowser Commands for SmartCircuit Models” on page 21](#)
- [“Session Commands” on page 22](#)

Model Commands

Model commands affect only a selected model instance. Following is a list of the model commands:

DumpMemory *output_file*

Dumps the current memory image of a model to the specified output file. If *output_file* exists, it is overwritten; otherwise, a new file is created.

ReportStatus

Prints a message that describes the configuration status of a model.

SetConstraints ON | OFF

Enables or disables timing constraint checks for a model. By default, models check for and warn of timing constraints.



Note

Some simulator vendors supply additional interfaces to the DumpMemory, ReportStatus, and SetConstraints capabilities.

SmartBrowser Commands for SmartCircuit Models

In addition to the model commands which apply to all SmartModels, the command channel also supports the following SmartBrowser commands for SmartCircuit models:

- Analyze Commands
- Assign Commands
- Examine Commands
- List Commands
- Set and Show Commands
- Trace Commands
- General Commands

For more information about these SmartBrowser commands, refer to the [SmartModel Library Users Manual](#).

Session Commands

Session commands act on all models in the simulation session. You can enable session commands by setting the LMC_COMMAND environment variable. Here is an example that enables tracing of timing files and model versions, followed by a list of all the session commands.

```
% setenv LMC_COMMAND "TraceTimeFile on;TracePath ON"
```



Note

The session command strings are case-insensitive, as illustrated above (ON and on are equivalent).

TraceTimeFile ON | OFF

Enables or disables trace messages that list the timing files loaded at simulation startup. The default is OFF.

TracePath ON | OFF

Enables or disables tracing of paths to files used to determine versions of models. The default is OFF.

Verbose ON | OFF

Enables or disables the generation of error messages when a SmartModel instance cannot be created. The default is OFF.

NoLicenseFatal ON | OFF

When set to ON, causes the SWIFT session to send a fatal error message to the simulator and terminate if any SmartModel in the simulation fails to authorize. The default is OFF.



Attention

You must invoke the TraceTimeFile, TracePath, and NoLicenseFatal commands before the start of the simulation run if you want them to take effect for that session.

Fault Simulations

The SmartModel Library fault simulation capability is folded into the logic simulation SmartModel Library so that only one set of directories and utilities need to be installed and maintained. Fault simulation availability depends on the:

- **Model**—Note that the following types of models are incompatible with fault simulation:
 - Hardware verification (HV) models are driven by PCL commands rather than machine instructions and do not respond adequately to propagated faults. Fault simulation results may not be as accurate when HV models are present in the circuit.
 - FlexModels do not support fault simulation.
 - SmartCircuit models do not support fault simulation.
- **Simulator**—Fault analysis is supported by Mentor’s QuickFault II, VEDA’s VerdictFault, and Teradyne’s LASAR. For more information about fault simulation support, refer to your simulator documentation.
- **Authorization**—You need one of the following license features:
 - `simmodel-ultra`
 - `simmodel-prem`
 - `simmodel-sw-all`
 - `simmodel-std`
 - `simmodel-base`
 - `simmodel-sw-model-model_name` (e.g., `simmodel-sw-ttl00`)

In most cases you can use the same circuit description for both logic and fault simulation. However, you may need to supply different circuit stimuli for each type of simulation. All model messages except version, copyright, and configuration error messages are suppressed in fault simulation. Usage and timing messages are suspended because they are meaningless in a fault simulation. In order to work efficiently during a fault simulation, each model manages its own diverge and converge operations.

Using FlexModels with SWIFT Simulators

Regardless of which simulator you are using, you must configure FlexModels by defining the required SWIFT parameters or attributes shown in [Table 2](#) for each FlexModel instance in your design. You configure FlexModels when you instantiate them in your design using these SWIFT parameters. This could take the form of Verilog defparams, VHDL generics, or symbol properties, depending on the simulator you are using.

Table 2: FlexModel SWIFT Parameters

Parameter ^a	Data Type	Description
FlexTimingMode	FLEX_TIMING_MODE_OFF (default) FLEX_TIMING_MODE_ON FLEX_TIMING_MODE_CYCLE	Disables/enables timing simulation. (For Verilog, prepend a back quote (`) to the constant.) Note: Direct C Control users can set this parameter to: - “0” for timing mode off - “1” for timing mode on - “2” for cycle-based timing
TimingVersion	Model timing version	The FlexModel timing version. Refer to the individual FlexModel datasheets for available timing versions.
DelayRange	“MIN”, “TYP”, “MAX” (default)	If you set FlexTimingMode to on, you can select MIN, TYP, or MAX delay values with this parameter.
FlexModelId	“ <i>instance_name</i> ”	A unique name that identifies each FlexModel instance. This name is also used by the flex_get_inst_handle command to get an integer instance handle. Note: Used only with _fx models
FlexModelId_cmd_stream	“ <i>instance_name</i> ”	A unique name that identifies each FlexModel instance or command stream. This name is also used by the flex_get_inst_handle command to get an integer instance handle. For information on <i>cmd_stream</i> names, refer to the individual FlexModel datasheets. Note: Used only with _fz models.

Table 2: FlexModel SWIFT Parameters (Continued)

Parameter ^a	Data Type	Description
FlexCFile	" <i>path_to_C_file</i> -u -c"	Specifies the path to an executable C program and whether to start up in coupled (-c) or uncoupled (-u) mode. Uncoupled mode is the default. Note: Used only with <i>_fx</i> models for Direct C Control.
FlexModelSrc_cmd_stream	" <i>path_to_C_file</i> -u -c"	If you want to control a FlexModel using Direct C Control, change the default value for <i>cmd_stream</i> (HDL) to the name of the command stream defined in the individual FlexModel datasheets. Use this parameter to specify the path to an executable C program and whether to start up in coupled (-c) or uncoupled (-u) mode. Uncoupled mode is the default. Note: Used only with <i>_fz</i> models for Direct C Control.

a. Some FlexModels have additional SWIFT parameters that need to be specified to configure internal memory (for example, the *usbhost_fz*). For details, refer to the individual FlexModel datasheets.

flexm_setup Command Reference

In addition to specifying SWIFT parameters, you must run the *flexm_setup* utility each time you install a new or updated FlexModel into your *\$LMC_HOME* tree. This ensures that you pick up the latest package files for that version of the model.

Syntax

```
flexm_setup [-help] [-dir path] model
```

Argument

model Pathname to the FlexModel you want to set up.

Switches

-help Prints help information.

`-d[ir] path` Copies the contents of the FlexModel's versioned `src/verilog` and `src/vhd` directories into `path/src/verilog` and `path/src/vhdl`. The directory specified by `path` must already exist.

Examples

When run without the `-dir` switch, `flexm_setup` just prints the name of the versioned directory of the selected model's source files

```
# Lists name of versioned directory containing source files
% flexm_setup mpc860_fx
```

When run with the `-dir` switch pointing to your working directory, `flexm_setup` copies over all the versioned package files you need to that working directory.

```
# Creates copy in 'flexmodel' directory of model source files
% mkdir workdir
% flexm_setup -dir workdir mpc860_fx
```

Instantiating FlexModels with Direct C Control

Direct C Control is how you use FlexModels on SWIFT simulators with standard FlexModel integrations. With Direct C Control, all model commands come from an external compiled C program that you point to using the `FlexCFile` SWIFT parameter. For users familiar with Synopsys Hardware Verification models, this is similar to setting the `PCLFile` parameter to point to the location of a compiled PCL program. In addition, you must also set the `FlexModelId` parameter, which does not have a default value. To generate model wrappers and instantiate models, you use the same simulator-specific procedures as you would for traditional SmartModels.

Note that the individual FlexModel datasheets document the command syntax and examples for issuing model commands from Verilog, VHDL, VERA, or C, but HDL control and switching between different command sources from the testbench are only available to the simulators with custom integrations. Other SWIFT simulators must stick to Direct C Control for issuing commands to FlexModels.

To use Direct C Control, follow these steps:

1. If you are using an HDL-based simulator, generate a model wrapper file (`model_fx.v` or `model_fx.vhd`) using your simulator vendor's procedure. Use the model wrapper to instantiate the model in your design. Add the `FlexCFile` parameter to the model instantiation and point it to the location of *your_compiled_C_file* that you create to drive commands into the model. Modify other SWIFT parameters in the model wrapper as needed. Here are some examples for how to instantiate a model for use with Direct C Control:

VHDL:

```
U1: pcimaster
  GENERIC MAP(
    FlexModelId => "modelId_1",
    FlexCFile => "./tb.o",
    FlexTimingMode => "1",
    TimingVersion => "pcimaster",
    DelayRange => "MAX"
```

Verilog:

```
defparam
  u1.FlexModelId = "modelId_1",
  u1.FlexCFile = "./tb.o",
  u1.FlexTimingMode = "1",
  u1.TimingVersion = "pcimaster",
  u1.DelayRange = "MAX";
```

For both of these examples, the C testbench file must have the same instance name, as follows:

```
int Id_1, status;
char *sInstName = "modelId_1";

/* Get the instance handle */
flex_get_inst_handle(sInstName,&Id_1, &status);
```

2. Create a working directory and run flexm_setup to make a copy of the model's C object file there, as shown in the following example:

```
% $LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
```

You must run flexm_setup every time you update your FlexModel installation with a new model version. [Table 3](#) lists the files that flexm_setup copies to your working directory.

Table 3: FlexModel Direct C Control Files

File Name	Description	Location
<i>model_pkg.o</i>	Model-specific functions for UNIX.	<i>workdir/src/C/</i>
<i>model_pkg.obj</i>	Model-specific functions for NT.	<i>workdir/src/C/</i>

3. Compile the C object files in with the C program that you write to drive commands into the model (represented in the following examples as *your_C_file.c*). Note that these examples include creation of a working directory (*workdir*) and running *flexm_setup*, as explained in the previous step. The compile line differs based on your platform:

- a. On HP-UX, you need to link in the *-LBSD* library as shown in the following example:

```
% mkdir workdir
% flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
% /bin/c89 -o executable_name \
your_C_file.c \
workdir/src/C/hp700/model_pkg.o \
${LMC_HOME}/lib/hp700.lib/flexmodel_pkg.o \
-I${LMC_HOME}/sim/C/src \
-Iworkdir/src/C \
-LBSD
```

- b. On Solaris, you need to link in the *-lsocket* library as shown in the following example:

```
% mkdir workdir
% flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
% cc -o executable_name \
your_C_file.c \
workdir/src/C/solaris/model_pkg.o \
${LMC_HOME}/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/flexmodel_pkg.o \
-I${LMC_HOME}/sim/C/src \
-Iworkdir/src/C \
-lsocket
```

- c. AIX:

```
% mkdir workdir
% flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
% /bin/cc -o executable_name \
your_C_file.c \
workdir/src/C/ibmrs/model_pkg.o \
${LMC_HOME}/lib/ibmrs.lib/flexmodel_pkg.o \
-Iworkdir/src/C \
-I${LMC_HOME}/sim/C/src \
-ldl
```

d. Linux:

```
% mkdir workdir
% flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
% egcs -o executable_name \
your_C_file.c \
workdir/src/C/x86_linux/model_pkg.o \
${LMC_HOME}/lib/x86_linux.lib/flexmodel_pkg.o \
-Iworkdir/src/C \
-IS${LMC_HOME}/sim/C/src
```

e. On NT, you need to link in a Windows socket library as shown in the following example.

```
> md workdir
> flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
> cl -O2 -MD -DMSC -DWIN32 -Feexecutable_name
your_C_file.c
workdir\src\C\pcnt\model_pkg.obj
%LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib\flexmodel_pkg.obj
-I%LMC_HOME%\sim\C\src
-Iworkdir\src\C
wsock32.lib
```

**Note**

The entire compilation expression must appear on the same line. The NT example was tested using Microsoft's Visual C++ compiler v5.0.

The C executable file that you created in this step is the program that you point to using the FlexCFile SWIFT attribute for the model instance in your design.

Using MemPro Models with VHDL and Verilog Simulators

Regardless of which simulator you are using, you must configure MemPro models by defining the required parameters or attributes shown in [Table 4](#) for each MemPro model instance in your design. You configure MemPro models when you instantiate them in your design using these generics or parameters.

Table 4: MemPro Generic/Parameter Descriptions

Name	Data Type	Description
model_id	Integer	Either the model_id or model_alias generic or parameter specifies a unique user handle for a specified model instance. This user handle is used to address a memory model using testbench commands. <i>Note:</i> You do not have to assign all MemPro model instances a model_id or model_alias, only those instances on which you wish to use the testbench interface. However, each model with a model_id or model_alias must be assigned a unique handle.
model_alias	String	
memoryfile	String	Specifies the file name of the memory image file to preload during model initialization. If memoryfile is set to a null string (memoryfile = ""), memory image preloading during initialization is disabled. Supported files formats are SmartModel Memory Image, Motorola S-Record, Intel Hex, and Verilog \$readmemh. Memory models can also be loaded using the mem_load command.
default_data	String	Specifies the default data returned from all uninitialized memory addresses. <i>Note:</i> Models in non-volatile memory classes may not have their Default Memory Value set to anything except all ones. Any other setting is ignored and MemGen issues an warning.
message_level	Integer	Specifies the type or types of messages returned by the model. For a detailed description of message types, refer to “Controlling MemPro Model Messages” on page 33

MemPro models are supported on the simulators listed in [Table 5](#).

Table 5: MemPro Supported Simulators

Verilog Simulators	VHDL Simulators
VCS	Scirocco
Verilog-XL	VSS
NC-Verilog	Cyclone
MTI Verilog	Leapfrog
	MTI VHDL
	NC-VHDL

Each of the simulators in [Table 5](#) has its own chapter in this manual that explains the simulator-specific procedure for using MemPro models in those environments.

Using MemPro Models with VHDL Simulators

This section describes how to include MemPro memory models and testbench interface commands in your design. The MemPro VHDL interface code is contained in the following files:

<code>slm_hdlc.vhd</code>	Simulator-specific HDL-to-C interface code.
<code>mempro_pkg.vhd</code>	MemPro-specific module containing the VHDL implementation of the MemPro testbench interface.
<code>rdramd_pkg.vhd</code>	RDRAM-specific module.

All of these files are located in the `$LMC_HOME/sim/simulator/src` directory.

Using MemPro Models with Verilog Simulators

This section describes how to include MemPro memory models and testbench interface commands in your design. The following files define MemPro PLI routines and interface commands:

<code>slm_pli.o</code>	PLI routines. This file is located in the <code>\$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib</code> directory.
<code>mempro_pkg.v</code>	Verilog testbench task definitions for MemPro interface commands. This file is located in the <code>\$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src</code> directory.

`mempro_c_tb.h` C testbench function definitions for MemPro interface commands. This is located in the `$LMC_HOME/include` directory.

Instantiating MemPro Models

You instantiate MemPro models just like any other HDL models, as shown in the following DRAM examples.

MemPro Verilog Instantiation

```
dram1x64 bank1
    ( .ras ( rasr ),
      .ucas ( ucasr ),
      .lcas ( lcasr ),
      .we   ( wer ),
      .oe   ( oer ),
      .a    ( adrr ),
      .dq   ( dataw ) );

defparam bank1.model_id      = "tbench.bank1",
          bank1.memoryfile   = "dram.dat",
          bank1.message_level = `SLM_XHANDLING | `SLM_TIMING | `SLM_WARNING,
          bank1.default_data  = 64'hxxx;
```

MemPro VHDL Instantiation

```
U1 : dram1x64
  generic map ( model_id      => 10,
                memoryfile   => "dram.dat",
                message_level => (SLM_TIMING + SLM_XHANDLING + SLM_WARNING),
                default_data  => "XXXX" );

  port map
    ( a          => adr,
      dq         => dataw,
      ras        => rasw,
      lcas       => lcasw,
      ucas       => ucasw,
      we         => we,
      oe         => oew );
```

Controlling MemPro Model Messages

MemPro model messages are grouped into categories that you can individually enable or disable for each model instance. Several message categories are applicable to all models; additional categories may be defined for specific models or model types. The general categories are:

Fatal

Fatal messages are always enabled. When a fatal error is detected, the simulation stops immediately after reporting the message. For example, referencing an unknown MemPro model instance handle causes a fatal error.

Error

Error messages apply to incorrect situations from which the model is able to recover, allowing simulation to continue. For example, MemPro generates an error message when the model receives a command that would put it in an illegal state.

Warning

Warning messages apply to situations that users may want to check, but are not obviously wrong. For example, MemPro generates a warning message when significant bits of an address are ignored.

Info

Info messages inform you of the status or behavior of the model. MemPro generates info messages infrequently. For example, when a memory model is initialized from a file, MemPro issues an info message.

Timing

MemPro uses timing messages to report timing constraint violations. Typical situations that cause timing messages are setup or pulse-width violations.

X-Handling

MemPro generates X-handling messages if a model samples unknowns on input ports when valid data was expected.

Controlling MemPro Message Output

There are three ways to control messaging for MemPro models:

1. Set individual Message Settings when you specify the model message categories (except Fatal).
2. Use the `message_level` generic or parameter. For more information, refer to [“Message Level Constants” on page 34](#).
3. Use a command stream or testbench command.

By default, MemPro models display all the general message categories (Fatal, Error, Warning, Info, Timing, and X-handling). If you set a generic or parameter for a model instance, that setting overrides the default behavior. In turn, if the command stream or testbench interface is used, it overrides the generic or parameter value.

Message Level Constants

MemPro provides constants for setting message levels on each instantiated model. The constants described in [Table 6](#) are defined in `mempro_pkg.v` (for Verilog simulators) and `mempro_pkg.vhd` (for VHDL simulators).

Table 6: MemPro Message Constant Descriptions

Constant	Value ^a	Description
SLM_ERROR	1	Fatal and error messages generated.
SLM_WARNING	2	Fatal and warning messages generated.
SLM_TIMING	4	Fatal and timing messages generated.
SLM_XHANDLING	8	Fatal and X-handling messages generated.
SLM_INFO	16	Fatal and info messages generated.
SLM_ALL_MSGS	$2^{28}-1$	All message types generated.
SLM_NO_MSGS	0	Only fatal messages generated.

a. Note that bits 5 through 27 are unused but reserved.

You can combine these constants to get any combination of messages you desire. The following Verilog and VHDL code fragments define a model instantiation having timing, X-handling, and warning (as well as fatal) messages enabled.

Verilog

```
bank1.message_level = `SLM_XHANDLING | `SLM_TIMING | `SLM_WARNING,
```

VHDL

```
message_level => (SLM_TIMING + SLM_XHANDLING + SLM_WARNING),
```

Using Hardware Models with Different Simulators

After you install your hardware modeling system, the final task is to link your simulator with the Synopsys Simulator Function Interface (SFI). Procedures for linking the simulator with the SFI are specific to the particular simulator.

Synopsys provides four ModelAccess products, supporting QuickSim II, Cyclone, Verilog-XL, and NC-Verilog. For usage information, refer to the following sections in this book:

- [“Using Hardware Models with QuickSim II” on page 246](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models with Cyclone” on page 176](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models with Verilog-XL” on page 85](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models with NC-Verilog” on page 111](#)

Linking Other Supported Simulators

Because many hardware modeling features are provided through the SFI software, the functionality of your environment is determined by the version of the SFI that is integrated with your simulator. Some simulators can be dynamically or statically linked on site with the most recent SFI. For the current list of simulators and versions that are supported for dynamic or static linking on site with the SFI, refer to [Hardware Modeling Supported Platforms and Simulators](#).

If you use one of the simulators on this list, you can link your simulator with the most recent version of the SFI libraries on the distribution media, allowing you to take advantage of the latest hardware modeling system software enhancements and bug fixes. Some simulators have additional requirements. For information, refer to your simulator vendor’s documentation.

If you use a simulator that is not on the list, consult your simulator vendor about which version of the SFI has been integrated with your simulator. Depending on the version of the SFI, you should be able to install and use the most recent Runtime Modeler Software, although you may not be able to take advantage of all hardware modeling system software enhancements and fixes.

IKOS Voyager

For information on this interface, refer to the *Voyager/LM Hardware Interface* chapter of the *Voyager Series User's Guide, Volume 4*.

Do not install the hardware modeling system software under the \$VOYAGER_HOME directory, or files could be overwritten and the installation corrupted. The IKOS-created sms directory (under \$VOYAGER_HOME) and the Synopsys-created sms directory must be kept separate.

Teradyne LASAR

You can dynamically link the SFI with LASAR. For complete Teradyne-specific installation information, refer to Teradyne's *LASAR Manager Guide for UNIX Systems*.

VEDA Vulcan

You can dynamically link the SFI with Vulcan at simulator runtime. For current linking information, please contact VEDA technical support directly.

Viewlogic Fusion ViewSim

You can statically link the SFI on-site with ViewSim. For information, refer to the Viewlogic Fusion ViewSim manual or contact Viewlogic technical support directly at 1-800-223-8439. In addition, Synopsys provides a SOLV-IT! article with some information. For instructions on accessing SOLV-IT!, refer to [“Getting Help” on page 14](#).

2

Using VCS with Synopsys Models

Overview

This chapter explains how to use SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models with VCS. These procedures are centered on VCS v5.1, but contain notes about other versions of VCS as well. The procedures are organized into the following major sections:

- [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 38](#)
- [“Using SmartModels with VCS” on page 39](#)
- [“Using FlexModels with VCS” on page 41](#)
- [“Using MemPro Models with VCS” on page 50](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models with VCS” on page 54](#)



Hint

This chapter includes a script that you can use to run any FlexModel examples testbench with minimal setup required. You can cut-and-paste the script right out of this PDF file. Refer to [“Script for Running FlexModel Examples in VCS” on page 48](#).

Setting Environment Variables

First, set the basic environment variables. If you are not using one of the model types, skip that step. In some cases the procedures that follow in this chapter include steps for setting additional environment variables.

1. Set the LMC_HOME variable to the location of your SmartModel, FlexModel, and MemPro model installation tree, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LMC_HOME path_to_models_installation
```

2. Set the LM_LICENSE_FILE or SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE environment variable to point to the product authorization file, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LM_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

```
% setenv SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

You can put license keys for multiple products (for example, SmartModels and hardware models) into the same authorization file. If you need to keep separate authorization files for different products, use a colon-separated list (UNIX) or semicolon-separated list (NT) to specify the search path in your variable setting.



Caution

Do not include la_dmon-based authorizations in the same file with snpslmd-based authorizations. If you have authorizations that use la_dmon, keep them in a separate license file that uses a different license server (lmgrd) process than the one you use for snpslmd-based authorizations.

3. If you are using the hardware modeler, set the LM_DIR and LM_LIB environment variables, as shown in the following examples:

```
% setenv LM_DIR hardware_model_install_path/sms/lm_dir
```

```
% setenv LM_LIB hardware_model_install_path/sms/models: \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/maps
```

If you put your models in a directory other than the default of /sms/models, modify the above variable setting accordingly.

4. Depending on your platform, set your load library variable to point to the platform-specific directory in \$LMC_HOME, as shown in the following examples:

Solaris:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

Linux:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

AIX:

```
% setenv LIBPATH $LMC_HOME/lib/ibmrs.lib:$LIBPATH
```

HP-UX:

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib:$SHLIB_PATH
```

NT:

Make sure that %LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib is in the Path user variable.

5. Set the VCS_HOME variable to the location of your VCS installation tree, as shown in the following example, and make sure that VCS is set up properly in your environment:

```
% setenv VCS_HOME VCS_install_path
```

6. Set the VCS_SWIFT_NOTES variable to 1, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv VCS_SWIFT_NOTES 1
```

Using SmartModels with VCS

To use SmartModels with VCS, follow this procedure:

1. Generate a Verilog model wrapper file by running VCS with the `-lmc-swift-template` switch, as shown in the following example:

```
% $VCS_HOME/bin/vcs -lmc-swift-template model
```

where *model* is the name of the model you want to use.

This will create a *model.swift.v* file. Note that VCS version 5.1 and up generates bused Verilog wrapper files by default. If you want bit-blasted wrappers, use the `-old` switch.

Synopsys provides a tool, `vcs_sg`, that allows you to generate multiple model wrapper files. You must select VCS as your Verilog simulator during the SmartModel installation in order to have `vcs_sg` available. It will be installed as

```
$LMC_HOME/bin/vcs_sg
```

The `vcs_sg` tool also extends the usefulness of the model wrapper files generated by VCS in two ways:

- it adds statements that allow the DelayRange to be controlled by the VCS command line `+define` parameters (or a `defparam` in your testbench)
- it adds a check for the VCS command line `+define+SwiftChecksOff` parameter that turns constraints off.

You can change the default name of the generated wrapper files (*<model>.swift.v*), as well as the location that the generated wrappers are written to. To see the usage message for the *vcs_sg* tool, invoke

```
$LMC_HOME/bin/vcs_sg -h
```

2. Instantiate SmartModels in your design, defining the ports and defparams as required. For details on the required SWIFT parameters and SmartModel instantiation examples, refer to [“SmartModel SWIFT Parameters” on page 18](#).
3. Invoke the VCS simulator as shown in the following examples:

Solaris:

```
% $VCS_HOME/bin/vcs -lmc-swift model.swift.v model_tb.v \  
-l vcs_sim.log \  
-Mupdate \  
-RI
```

HP-UX:

```
% $VCS_HOME/bin/vcs -lmc-swift model.swift.v model_tb.v \  
-l vcs_sim.log \  
-Mupdate \  
-RI \  
-LDFLAGS "-a shared -lm -lc -a archive"
```

AIX:

```
% $VCS_HOME/bin/vcs -lmc-swift model.swift.v model_tb.v \  
-l vcs_sim.log \  
-Mupdate \  
-RI \  
-LDFLAGS -lld
```

Linux:

```
% $VCS_HOME/bin/vcs -lmc-swift model.swift.v model_tb.v \  
-l vcs_sim.log \  
-Mupdate \  
-RI \  
-LDFLAGS -rdynamic
```

where *model.swift.v* is the template you created in the previous step and *model_tb.v* is the testbench where the model is instantiated. Each model instantiated in the testbench must have a *model.swift.v* wrapper file listed on the VCS invocation line.

VCS SmartModel Explanation

Table 7 lists each line in the invocation examples above, along with explanations for what each one does.

Table 7: VCS SmartModel Explanation

Line Reference	Description
<code>\$VCS_HOME/bin/vcs -lmc-swift model.swift.v model_tb.v</code>	Path to the file that starts the VCS simulator, a switch that causes VCS to load the SWIFT interface, and then the specified model wrapper and Verilog testbench files.
<code>-l vcs_sim.log</code>	Specifies a log file where VCS writes compilation and simulation messages.
<code>-Mupdate</code>	This specifies incremental compilation, which causes VCS to compile only the modules that have changed since the last run.
<code>-RI</code>	This makes VCS run interactively. VCS invokes the XVCS GUI after compilation and pauses the simulator at time zero.
<code>-LDFLAGS switches</code>	Additional platform-specific switches that may be needed.

Using FlexModels with VCS

To use FlexModels with VCS, follow this procedure. VCS links the external PLI routines that contain the custom FlexModel integration code during compilation of your design. This procedure covers users on UNIX and NT. If you are on NT, substitute the appropriate NT syntax for any UNIX command line examples (percent signs around variables and backslashes in paths).

1. If you want the improved performance that comes with bused wrappers, generate a Verilog model wrapper file by running VCS with the `-lmc-swift-template` switch, as shown in the following example:

```
% $VCS_HOME/bin/vcs -lmc-swift-template model
```

where *model* is the name of the model you want to use.

This creates a *model.swift.v* file. Note that VCS version 5.1 and up generates bused Verilog wrapper files by default. For bit-blasted wrappers, use the `-old` switch.

**Note**

The bused wrappers enable improved performance but do not work with the examples testbench shipped with the model. To exercise the examples testbench, use the wrappers shipped with the model (see [Table 8](#)), as explained in the rest of this procedure. If you are using the bused wrappers, adjust accordingly.

2. Create a working directory and run `flexm_setup` to make copies of the model's interface and example files there, as shown in the following example:

```
% $LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
```

You must run `flexm_setup` every time you update your FlexModel installation with a new model version. [Table 8](#) lists the files that `flexm_setup` copies to your working directory.

Table 8: FlexModel VCS Verilog Files

File Name	Description	Location
<i>model_pkg.inc</i>	Verilog task definitions for FlexModel interface commands. This file also references the <i>flexmodel_pkg.inc</i> and <i>model_user_pkg.inc</i> files.	<i>workdir/src/verilog/</i>
<i>model_user_pkg.inc</i>	Clock frequency setup and user customizations.	<i>workdir/src/verilog/</i>
<i>model_fx_vcs.v</i>	A SWIFT wrapper that you can use to instantiate the model.	<i>workdir/examples/verilog/</i>
<i>model.v</i>	A bus-level wrapper around the SWIFT model. This allows you to use vectored ports for the model in your testbench.	<i>workdir/examples/verilog/</i>
<i>model_tst.v</i>	A testbench that instantiates the model and shows how to use basic model commands.	<i>workdir/examples/verilog/</i>

3. Update the clock frequency supplied in the *model_user_pkg.inc* file to correspond to the CLK period you want for the model. This file is located in:

```
workdir/src/verilog/model_user_pkg.inc
```

where *workdir* is your working directory.

4. Add the following line to your Verilog testbench to include FlexModel testbench interface commands in your design:

```
`include "model_pkg.inc"
```

Be sure to add this within the module from which you will be issuing FlexModel commands. The *model_pkg.inc* file also includes references to *flexmodel_pkg.inc* and *model_user_pkg.inc*, so you don't need to add them to your testbench.

5. Instantiate FlexModels in your design, defining the ports and defparams as required (refer to the example testbench supplied with the model). You use the supplied bus-level wrapper (*model.v*) in the top-level of your design to instantiate the supplied bit-blasted wrapper (*model_fx_vcs.v*).

Example using bus-level wrapper (*model.v*) without timing:

```
model U1 ( model_ports )
defparam
    U1.FlexModelId = "TMS_INST1";
```

Example using bus-level wrapper (*model.v*) with timing:

```
model U1 ( model_ports )
defparam
    U1.FlexTimingMode = `FLEX_TIMING_MODE_ON,
    U1.TimingVersion = "timingversion",
    U1.DelayRange = "range",
    U1.FlexModelId= "TMS_INST1";
```

6. Invoke VCS to compile and simulate your design as shown in the following examples:

Solaris

```
% vcs -o simv workdir/examples/verilog/model.v \
workdir/examples/verilog/model_fx_vcs.v \
$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/slm_pli.o \
testbench.v \
-P $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab -cc cc_path \
-lmc-swift \
+incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src \
+incdir+workdir/src/verilog
% simv
```

HP-UX

```
% vcs -o simv workdir/examples/verilog/model.v \
workdir/examples/verilog/model_fx_vcs.v \
$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/slm_pli.o \
testbench.v \
-P $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab -cc cc_path \
-lmc-swift \
+incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src \
+incdir+workdir/src/verilog \
-LDFLAGS "-a shared -lm -lc -a archive"
% simv
```

AIX

```
% vcs -o simv workdir/examples/verilog/model.v \
workdir/examples/verilog/model_fx_vcs.v \
$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/slm_pli.o \
testbench.v \
-P $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab -cc cc_path \
-lmc-swift \
+incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src \
+incdir+workdir/src/verilog \
-LDFLAGS -lld
% simv
```

Linux

```
% vcs -o simv workdir/examples/verilog/model.v \
workdir/examples/verilog/model_fx_vcs.v \
$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/slm_pli.o \
testbench.v \
-P $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab -cc cc_path \
-lmc-swift \
+incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src \
+incdir+workdir/src/verilog \
-LDFLAGS -rdynamic
% simv
```

where *platform* is hp700, sun4Solaris, ibmrs, or x86_linux, and *cc_path* is the path to your compiler.

NT

```
> vcs -o simv .\examples\verilog\model.v
workdir\examples\verilog\model_fx_vcs.v
+incdir+%LMC_HOME%\sim\pli\src
+incdir+workdir\src\verilog
testbench.v
-lmc-swift -P
%LMC_HOME%\sim\pli\src\slm_pli.tab
%LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib\slm_pli_vcs.lib

> simv.exe
```

**Note**

The entire compilation expression must appear on the same line. The NT example was tested using Microsoft's Visual C++ compiler v5.0.

VCS FlexModel Examples

First we present a basic one-model example and then show you how to use more than one FlexModel in the same simulation in the following sections:

- “One FlexModel on Solaris” on page 45
- “Two FlexModels on Solaris” on page 47
- “Three FlexModels on HP-UX” on page 47

One FlexModel on Solaris

To use one FlexModel with VCS on Solaris, invoke the simulator as shown in the following example:

```
% $VCS_HOME/bin/vcs \  
`$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup model_fx`/examples/verilog/model_tst.v \  
`$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup model_fx`/examples/verilog/model.v \  
`$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup model_fx`/examples/verilog/model_fx_vcs.v \  
+incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src \  
+incdir+`$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup model_fx`/src/verilog \  
-P $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab \  
$LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/slm_pli.o \  
+incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src \  
-l vcs_sim.log \  
-Mupdate \  
-RI \  
-lmc-swift
```

where *model* is the name of the FlexModel you are using.

Table 10 lists each line in the invocation example above, along with explanations for what each one does.

Table 9: VCS With One FlexModel On Solaris Model Explanation

Line Reference	Description
<code>\$VCS_HOME/bin/vcs</code>	Path to the file that starts the VCS simulator.
<code>`\$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup model_fx` /examples/verilog/model_tst.v</code>	Specifies the path to the model testbench file.
<code>`\$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup model_fx` /examples/verilog/model.v</code>	Specifies the path to the model Verilog wrapper file.
<code>`\$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup model_fx` /examples/verilog/model_fx_vcs.v</code>	Specifies the path to the model VCS template file.
<code>+incdir+\$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src</code>	Includes the path to the flexmodel_pkg.inc file, which contains Verilog task definitions for general FlexModel interface commands.
<code>+incdir+`\$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup model_fx`/src/verilog</code>	Includes the path to the model-specific Verilog task files, including <i>model_pkg.inc</i> .
<code>-P \$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab</code>	Specifies the FlexModel/MemPro PLI table entry file.
<code>\$LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/slm_pli.o</code>	Specifies the platform-specific PLI object file.
<code>-l vcs_sim.log</code>	Specifies a log file where VCS writes compilation and simulation messages.
<code>-Mupdate</code>	This specifies incremental compilation, which causes VCS to compile only the modules that have changed since the last run.
<code>-RI</code>	This makes VCS run interactively. VCS invokes the XVCS GUI after compilation and pauses the simulator at time zero.
<code>-lmc-swift</code>	This switch causes VCS to load the SWIFT interface.

Two FlexModels on Solaris

This example shows how to use the `mpc740_fx` and `mpc750_12_fx` FlexModels together with VCS on Solaris. Invoke the simulator as shown in the following example:

```
% $VCS_HOME/bin/vcs \
`$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup mpc750_12_fx`/examples/verilog/mpc750_12_tst.v \
`$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup mpc750_12_fx`/examples/verilog/mpc750_12.v \
`$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup mpc750_12_fx`/examples/verilog/mpc750_12_fx_vcs.v \
`$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup mpc740_fx`/examples/verilog/mpc740.v \
`$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup mpc740_fx`/examples/verilog/mpc740_fx_vcs.v \
+incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src \
+incdir+`$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup mpc750_12_fx`/src/verilog \
+incdir+`$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup mpc740_fx`/src/verilog \
-P $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab \
$LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/slm_pli.o \
+incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src \
-l vcs_sim.log \
-Mupdate \
-RI \
-lmc-swift
```

Three FlexModels on HP-UX

This next example shows how to use the PCI system testbench and the `pcimaster_fx`, `pcislave_fx`, and `pcimonitor_fx` FlexModels together with VCS on HP-UX. Follow these steps:

1. Set up the PCI system testbench as shown in the following example:

```
% mkdir pci_tb
% cp -rf `$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup pcimaster_fx`/* pci_tb
% cp -rf `$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup pcimonitor_fx`/* pci_tb
% cp -rf `$LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup pcislave_fx`/* pci_tb
```

2. Invoke the VCS simulator as shown in the following example:

```
% $VCS_HOME/bin/vcs \
./pci_tb/examples/verilog/pcisys_tst.v \
./pci_tb/examples/verilog/pcimaster.v \
./pci_tb/examples/verilog/pcimaster_fx_vcs.v \
./pci_tb/examples/verilog/pcislave.v \
./pci_tb/examples/verilog/pcislave_fx_vcs.v \
./pci_tb/examples/verilog/pcimonitor.v \
./pci_tb/examples/verilog/pcimonitor_fx_vcs.v \
+incdir+./pci_tb/src/verilog \
+incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src \
$LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/slm_pli.o \
-P $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab \
-l vcs_sim.log \
-Mupdate \
-RI \
```

```
-lmc-swift \
-LDFLGS "-a shared -lm -lc -a archive"
```

Script for Running FlexModel Examples in VCS

On [page 49](#) is a Perl script ([Figure 1](#)) that you can use to run VCS on a FlexModel examples testbench. You can use this script on any installed FlexModel because each one comes with a prebuilt testbench example that shows how to use the model commands and all the Verilog wrapper and task definition files that you need. This script runs on HP-UX, Solaris, and NT.

To invoke VCS on a FlexModel and its example testbench, follow these steps:

1. Use the Acrobat Reader's text selection tool to select the script shown in [Figure 1](#) and copy the contents to a local file named `run_flex_examples_in_vcs.pl`.
2. Save the file and change the permissions so that the file is executable (`chmod 775` in UNIX).
3. If you are on NT, you also need to copy the following line to a file named `run_flex_examples_in_vcs.cmd` and put it in your working directory:

```
%LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib\sl_perl.exe run_flex_example_in_vcs.pl %*
```

On NT you invoke this cmd wrapper, which subinvokes the Perl script.

4. Invoke the script as shown in the following examples:

UNIX

```
% run_flex_examples_in_vcs.pl model_fx
```

NT

```
> run_flex_examples_in_vcs.cmd model_fx
```

where `model_fx` is the name of the FlexModel you want to run.



This script was developed for internal use and is made available for user convenience. It is not actively maintained as part of the licensed software.

```
#!/usr/local/bin/perl
# $Revision$
$output_file = "Example_Simulator_Run_Script";
die "\nERROR running $0: ", "No FlexModel name given\n\n", unless($ARGV[0] );
$LmcHome = $ENV{ LMC_HOME }; die "ERROR running $0: ", "The LMC_HOME environment
variable must be set.\n" unless( $LmcHome );
$VcsHome = $ENV{ VCS_HOME };
die "ERROR running $0: ", "The VCS_HOME environment variable must be set.\n" unless(
$VcsHome );$VcsSwiftNotes = $ENV{ VCS_SWIFT_NOTES };
die "ERROR running $0: ", "The VCS_SWIFT_NOTES environment variable must be set.\n",
"\nSet VCS_SWIFT_NOTES to the value 1\n\n", unless( $VcsSwiftNotes );
require "$LmcHome/lib/bin/libmdl01003.pl";
$Platform = GetPlatform();
$Platform_lib = PlatformToLibDir($Platform);
%platform_suffix = ( hp700 => "o", solaris => "o", pcnt => "lib");
$suffix = $platform_suffix{ $Platform };$flexmodel_name = $ARGV[0];
$model_path = $LmcHome . "/models/" . $flexmodel_name;
if ( -e $model_path ) {}
else { die "\nERROR running $0: ", "FlexModel $flexmodel_name Does not Exist in
Library\n\n"; }$version_path = `$LmcHome/bin/flexm_setup $flexmodel_name`;
chomp($version_path);
if ( $flexmodel_name =~ /_fx/ ) { $flexmodel_name =~ s/_fx//g; $flex_or_c = "_fx";}
elsif ( $flexmodel_name =~ /_fz/ ) {
    $flexmodel_name =~ s/_fz//g;
    $flex_or_c = "_fz";}
else { die "\nERROR running $0: ", "$flexmodel_name is not a FlexModel. Model must
have an _fx or _fz to be a FlexModel\n\n";}
$execute_command = $VcsHome . "/bin/vcs -Mupdate -RI -l vcs_sim.log "
    . $version_path . "/examples/verilog/"
    . $flexmodel_name . "_tst.v +incdir+"
    . $version_path . "/src/verilog +libext+.inc "
    . $version_path . "/examples/verilog/" . $flexmodel_name . ".v "
    . $version_path . "/examples/verilog/"
    . $flexmodel_name . $flex_or_c . "_vcs.v ";
if ( $Platform eq "pcnt" ) {
    $execute_command = $execute_command . $LmcHome . $Platform_lib . "slm_pli_vcs." .
    $suffix;}
else {
    $execute_command = $execute_command . $LmcHome . $Platform_lib . "slm_pli." .
    $suffix;}
$execute_command = $execute_command . " -P " . $LmcHome . "/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab"
    . " -lmc-swift +incdir+" . $LmcHome . "/sim/pli/src"; print "$execute_command\n";
open(OFILE,"> $output_file") || die " Could not create file : $output_file\n";
print OFILE ("# This is an example of VCS command line to run the\n");
print OFILE ("# supplied FlexModel testbench.\n");
print OFILE ("# Note: The model version was calculated using the flexm_setup
command\n");print OFILE ("#\n$execute_command\n");
close(OFILE); system($execute_command);
```

Figure 1: run_flex_examples_in_vcs.pl Script

Example Simulator Run Script

The `run_flex_examples_in_vcs.pl` script also creates an example simulator run script in your current working directory for the specified model. You can use this run script to invoke VCS after running the `run_flex_examples_in_vcs.pl` script. The following example shows the contents of the “Example_Simulator_Run_Script” after running the `run_flex_examples_in_vcs.pl` script using the `mpc860_fx` model.

```
# This is an example of VCS command line to run the supplied FlexModel
testbench.
# Note: The model version was calculated using the flexm_setup command

/d/vcs501/vcs5.0.1A/bin/vcs -Mupdate -RI -l vcs_sim.log
/d/lmgqa2/install/lmc_home/models/mpc860_fx/mpc860_fx02009/examples/veri
log/mpc860_tst.v
+incdir+/d/lmgqa2/install/lmc_home/models/mpc860_fx/mpc860_fx02009/src/v
erilog +libext+.inc
/d/lmgqa2/install/lmc_home/models/mpc860_fx/mpc860_fx02009/examples/veri
log/mpc860.v
/d/lmgqa2/install/lmc_home/models/mpc860_fx/mpc860_fx02009/examples/veri
log/mpc860_fx_vcs.v /d/lmgqa2/install/lmc_home/lib/hp700.lib/slm_pli.o -
P /d/lmgqa2/install/lmc_home/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab -lmc-swift
+incdir+/d/lmgqa2/install/lmc_home/sim/pli/src
```

Using MemPro Models with VCS

To use MemPro models with VCS, follow this procedure. VCS links external PLI routines during compilation of your design. You do not need to rebuild the VCS simulator.

1. To use the MemPro C testbench, add the following line to your local copy of `slm_pli.tab`:

```
$your_task_name call=your_fn_name
```

2. If you are using MemPro testbench interface commands in your design, perform step [2a](#) or step [2b](#). If you are not using HDL or C testbenches, skip to step [3](#).
 - a. If you are using Verilog testbench calls, add the following line to your Verilog testbench.

```
`include "mempro_pkg.v"
```

- b. If you are using the MemPro C testbench, add the following line to your C testbench code.

```
#include "mempro_c_tb.h"
```

For more information on using the MemPro testbench interfaces, refer to the “[HDL Testbench Interface](#)” and “[C Testbench Interface](#)” chapters in the *MemPro User’s Manual*.

3. Invoke VCS to compile and simulate your design:

HP-UX

If you *are not* using the MemPro C testbench:

```
% vcs Verilog_modules MemPro_model_files \
  $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/slm_pli.o \
  -P $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab \
  +incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src -RI \
  -LDFLAGS "-Wl,-a,default -ldld -lc -lm -lBSD"
```

If you *are* using the MemPro C testbench:

```
% vcs Verilog_modules MemPro_model_files \
  $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/slm_pli.o \
  -P local_slm_pli.tab your_testbench.c \
  -CFLAGS "-I$LMC_HOME/include" \
  +incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src -RI \
  -LDFLAGS "-Wl,-a,default -ldld -lc -lm -lBSD"
```

Solaris

If you *are not* using the MemPro C testbench:

```
% vcs Verilog_modules MemPro_model_files \
  $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/slm_pli.o \
  -P $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab \
  +incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src -RI
```

If you *are* using the MemPro C testbench:

```
% vcs Verilog_modules MemPro_model_files \
  $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/slm_pli.o \
  -P local_slm_pli.tab your_testbench.c \
  -CFLAGS "-I$LMC_HOME/include" \
  +incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src -RI
```

Example:

```
% vcs tbench.v mydram.v mysram.v \
  $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/slm_pli.o \
  -P $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab \
  +incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src -RI
```

NT

If you *are not* using the MemPro C testbench:

```
> vcs Verilog_modules MemPro_model_files
   %LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib\slm_pli_vcs.lib
   -p %LMC_HOME%\sim\pli\src\slm_pli.tab
   +incdir+%LMC_HOME%\sim\pli\src -RI
```

If you *are* using the MemPro C testbench:

```
> vcs Verilog_modules MemPro_model_files
   %LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib\slm_pli_vcs.lib
   -P local_slm_pli.tab your_testbench.c
   -CFLAGS "-I%LMC_HOME%\include"
   +incdir+%LMC_HOME%\sim\pli\src -RI
```



Attention

If you are using VCS 5.0 or earlier, add the “-Zp4” switch to your VCS command and replace the “slm_pli_vcs.lib” library with the “slm_pli_v4vcs.lib” library. If you are using VCS 5.1 or later, add the “-ldl” switch to your VCS command.

Linux

If you *are not* using the MemPro C testbench:

```
% vcs Verilog_modules MemPro_model_files \
   $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib/slm_pli.o \
   -P $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab \
   +incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src -RI \
   -LDFLAGS -rdynamic
```

If you *are* using the MemPro C testbench:

```
% vcs Verilog_modules MemPro_model_files \
   $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib/slm_pli.o \
   -P local_slm_pli.tab your_testbench.c \
   -CFLAGS "-I$LMC_HOME/include" \
   +incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src -RI \
   -LDFLAGS -rdynamic
```

4. Instantiate MemPro models in your design. Define ports and generics as required. For information on generics used with MemPro models, refer to [“Instantiating MemPro Models” on page 32](#).

5. Compile your design:

If you *are* using the MemScope Dynamic Data Exchange feature:

```
% vcs +vcs+lic+wait +incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src \
    design_name $LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/slm_pli.o \
    -Xstrict -P $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab -cc $cc_path
```

If you *are not* using the MemScope Dynamic Data Exchange feature:

```
% vcs +vcs+lic+wait +incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src \
    design_name $LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/slm_pli.o \
    -P $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab -cc $cc_path
```

6. Invoke VCS on your design:

```
% simv
```

VCS MemPro Model Explanation

Table 10 lists each line in the invocation examples above, along with explanations for what each one does.

Table 10: VCS MemPro Model Explanation

Line Reference	Description
<code>\$VCS_HOME/bin/vcs mempro_model.v mempro_model_tb.v</code>	Path to the file that starts the VCS simulator, followed by the specified model and testbench Verilog files.
<code>-P \$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/slm_pli.tab</code>	Specifies the MemPro PLI table entry file.
<code>\$LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/slm_pli.o</code>	Specifies the platform-specific MemPro PLI object file.
<code>-Mupdate</code>	This specifies incremental compilation, which causes VCS to compile only the modules that have changed since the last run.
<code>-RI</code>	This makes VCS run interactively. VCS invokes the XVCS GUI after compilation and pauses the simulator at time zero.
<code>-LDFLAGS switches</code>	Additional platform-specific switches that may be needed.

Using Hardware Models with VCS

To use hardware models with VCS, follow this procedure:

1. Add the hardware model install tree to your path variable, as shown in the following example:

```
% set path=(/install/sms/bin/platform/ $path)
```

2. Set the VCS_LMC environment variable to the hm directory in the VCS install, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv VCS_LMC $VCS_HOME/platform/lmc/hm
```

3. Set the LM_SFI environment variable to the SFI directory in the hardware modeling tree, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LM_SFI hardware_modeler_install_path/sms/lib/platform/
```

4. Set the VCS_LMC_HM_ARCH environment variable so that you can later use the -lmc-hm switch. This variable must be set to find the SFI directory in the sms/lib tree, as shown in the following examples:

Solaris

```
% setenv VCS_LMC_HM_ARCH sun4.solaris
```

HP-UX

```
% setenv VCS_LMC_HM_ARCH pa_hp102
```

5. Create a Verilog HDL template for the hardware model using the `lmcv_template` script provided by VCS, as shown in the following example:

```
% lmcv_template model_file
```

where *model_file* is the name of the hardware model's .MDL file.

For example, if your model is the TILS299, enter:

```
% lmcv_template TILS299.MDL
```

This step produces a `TILS299.lmcv.v` file that contains the module definition with all the calls, declarations, and assignments necessary to make the file a valid VCS module.



Note

The `lmcv_template` program looks for Shell Software files in the directories indicated by the `LM_LIB` environment variable. You can modify the port list generated by the `lmcv_template` to match the existing model instantiations by editing the .NAM file.

6. Compile your description. Make sure to include the hardware model template and supporting PLI and library files. To interface the hardware modeler to VCS, add the `-lmc-hm` switch to the VCS command line, as shown in the following example:

```
% vcs +plusarg_save -RI test.v TILS299.lmvc.v -lmc-hm -o simv \  
+override_model_delays +maxdelays -l vcs.log &
```

You can optionally invoke VCS without the `-lmc-hm` switch by using the `-P` switch to point to the `$VCS_LMC/lmvc.tab` file and including the `$VCS_LMC/lmvc.o` object file and `$LM_SFI/lm_sfi.a` library, as shown in the following example:

```
% vcs +plusarg_save -RI test.v TILS299.lmvc.v -P $VCS_LMC/lmvc.tab \  
$VCS_LMC/lmvc.o $LM_SFI/lm_sfi.a -o simv \  
+override_model_delays +maxdelays -l vcs.log &
```

where:

- `vcs` is the compiler
- `test.v` is the file that is part of the top level system source files
- `TILS299.lmvc.v` is the vcs template for the HW model
- `lmvc.tab` is the VCS file for `lmvc` calls for vector logging, and timing measurement
- `lmvc.o` is the object code for LMC C file (`lmvc.c`), which contains the definitions for all the `lmvc` tasks/functions.
- `lm_sfi.a` is the simulator function interface software that links the VCS simulator to the hardware modeler.
- `+override_model_delays` is a switch that allows you to specify timing other than typical.



Note

the `-RI` option is not required to generate the `simv` file. It is used to have the simulator automatically execute after compilation and to use the `xvcs` debugger.

For more information on using the `.tab/.c` files and options with VCS, refer to the *VCS Users's Guide*.

Note that in the previous VCS releases, the hardware model could only be simulated with typical delays. The VCS 5.2 release has removed this restriction, so you can now either use a runtime option on the command line or make the change in the `delayrange` parameter. Note that the runtime option does override any `delayrange` parameter specification. The following excerpt is from the VCS 5.2 Release Notes:

VCS 5.2 has a new runtime option, `+override_model_delays` that enables you to use the `+mindelays`, `typdelays`, or `+maxdelays` runtime option to specify timing in SWIFT SmartModels or Synopsys hardware models and in so doing override the `DelayRange` parameter in the template files for these models that otherwise specifies the timing for the model.

Example Using Runtime Option

Here is an example using the runtime option:

```
% vcs +plusarg_save -RI test.v TILS299.lmvc.v -P $VCS_LMC/lmvc.tab \
$VCS_LMC/lmvc.o $LM_SFI/lm_sfi.a -o simv +override_model_delays \
+maxdelays -l vcs.log &
```

Example Using DelayRange Parameter

Here is an example using the `DelayRange` parameter:

```
TILS299 hwm_1 ( .\SL (shift_left), .\CLK (clock), .\SR
(shift_right), .\NCLR (clear),
.\-G2 (g2), .\-G1 (g1), .\S1 (select_1), .\S0
(select_0),
.\D/QD (bit_4), .\F/QF (bit_6), .\B/QB (bit_2),
.\C/QC (bit_3),
.\A/QA (bit_1), .\G/QG (bit_7), .\E/QE (bit_5),
.\H/QH (bit_8),
.\QA (high_bit), .\QH (low_bit) );
`ifdef MAX
defparam hwm_1.DelayRange = "MAX" ;
`endif
```

Run your simulation as usual. After running the `vcs` compiler, you should see a compiled `simv` file. To run your simulation, type in `simv`.

You need an additional passcode to use the hardware model interface. If you do not have a passcode, contact VCS Simulation Support at 800-837-4564.

VCS Utilities

If you want to turn on test vector logging or timing measurement, you can invoke tasks `'lm_log'`, `'lm_log_off'`, `'lm_measure_time'`, or `'lm_measure_time_off'`.

```
instance_name.lm_measure_time;
instance_name.lm_measure_time_off;
```

where *instance_name* is a string that is the hierarchical path name of the instance for the hardware model. For example, assuming that our instance is `top.hwm_1` with these features, it would look like the following example:

```
module top;
    TILS299 hwm_1();
    initial begin
        top.hwm_1.lm_measure_time;
        top.hwm_1.lm_log ("file_name");
        #7000;

        top.hwm_1.lm_measure_time_off;
        top.hwm_1.lm_log_off;
    end
end
```

3

Using Verilog-XL with Synopsys Models

Overview

This chapter explains how to use SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models with Verilog-XL. The procedures are organized into the following major sections:

- [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 59](#)
- [“Using SmartModels with Verilog-XL” on page 61](#)
- [“Using FlexModels with Verilog-XL” on page 78](#)
- [“Using MemPro Models with Verilog-XL” on page 80](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models with Verilog-XL” on page 85](#)

Setting Environment Variables

First, set the basic environment variables. If you are not using one of the model types, skip that step. In some cases the procedures that follow in this chapter include steps for setting additional environment variables.

1. Set the LMC_HOME variable to the location of your SmartModel, FlexModel, and MemPro model installation tree, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LMC_HOME path_to_models_installation
```

2. Set the `LM_LICENSE_FILE` or `SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE` environment variable to point to the product authorization file, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LM_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
% setenv SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

You can put license keys for multiple products (for example, SmartModels and hardware models) into the same authorization file. If you need to keep separate authorization files for different products, use a colon-separated list (UNIX) or semicolon-separated list (NT) to specify the search path in your variable setting.



Caution

Do not include `la_dmon`-based authorizations in the same file with `snpslmd`-based authorizations. If you have authorizations that use `la_dmon`, keep them in a separate license file that uses a different license server (`lmgrd`) process than the one you use for `snpslmd`-based authorizations.

3. If you are using the hardware modeler, set the `LM_DIR` and `LM_LIB` environment variables, as shown in the following examples:

```
% setenv LM_DIR hardware_model_install_path/sms/lm_dir
% setenv LM_LIB hardware_model_install_path/sms/models: \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/maps
```

If you put your models in a directory other than the default of `/sms/models`, modify the above variable setting accordingly.



Note

On NT, these hardware modeler environment variables are set automatically when you install the software.

4. Set the `CDS_INST_DIR` variable to the location of your Cadence installation tree, as shown in the following example, and make sure that Verilog-XL is set up properly in your environment:

```
% setenv CDS_INST_DIR path_to_Cadence_installation
```

5. Depending on your platform, set your load library variable to point to the platform-specific directory in `$LMC_HOME`, as shown in the following examples:

Solaris:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

Linux:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

AIX:

```
% setenv LIBPATH $LMC_HOME/lib/ibmrs.lib:$LIBPATH
```

HP-UX:

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib:$SHLIB_PATH
```

NT:

Make sure that %LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib is in the Path user variable.

Using SmartModels with Verilog-XL

SmartModels work with Verilog-XL using a PLI application called LMTV that is delivered in the form of a swiftpli shared library in \$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib. If you cannot use the swiftpli, refer to [“Static Linking with LMTV” on page 62](#).

To use the prebuilt swiftpli, follow this procedure:

1. Instantiate the SmartModels in your design, defining the ports and defparams as required. For details on required SmartModel SWIFT parameters and a model instantiation example, refer to [“Using SmartModels with SWIFT Simulators” on page 18](#).
2. There is no need to build a Verilog executable. You can use the one that Cadence provides at \$CDS_INST_DIR/tools/bin by adding it to your path variable.
3. To use the swiftpli shared library, invoke the Verilog simulator to compile and simulate your design as shown in the examples below:

UNIX

```
% verilog testbench model.v +loadplil=swiftpli:swift_boot \
+incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src
```

NT

```
> verilog testbench model.v +loadplil=swiftpli:swift_boot
+incdir+%LMC_HOME%\sim\pli\src
```



Note

For information on LMTV commands that you can use with SmartModels on Verilog-XL, refer to [“LMTV Commands” on page 283](#).

Static Linking with LMTV

If you cannot use the Synopsys-supplied swiftpli shared library, refer to the Cadence documentation for information on using the PLIWizard to build your own PLI library. Synopsys still ships the files needed to build your own PLI. These include:

- edited copy of veriuser.c in the \$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src directory
- LMTV object (lmtv.o) in the \$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib directory

If you build your own PLI, you will need to edit the veriuser.c file to pick up the LMTV header files as follows:

```
a. After #include "vxl_veriuser.h" add:  
#include "ccl_lmtv_include.h"  
b. After /*** add user entries here ***/ add:  
#include "ccl_lmtv_include_code.h"
```

Verilog-XL Usage Notes for SmartModels

This section describes the Synopsys Logic Models To Verilog (LMTV) interface. You can use LMTV to instantiate and work with SmartModels in Verilog-XL, as described in the following sections:

- [LMTV Modes of Operation](#)
- [Capturing and Simulating the Design](#)
- [Using SmartModel Windows with Verilog-XL](#)
- [Customizing Model Timing](#)
- [Simulating an Older Design Using LMTV](#)
- [Using FlexModels with Verilog-XL](#)

LMTV Modes of Operation

To take advantage of the SWIFT SmartModel Library while maintaining compatibility with the older Verilog-XL-specific SmartModel Library, the LMTV interface has two modes of operation, SWIFT SmartModel Mode and Historic SmartModel Mode.

SWIFT SmartModel Mode

In SWIFT SmartModel mode, the models you instantiate are SWIFT SmartModels. This is the mode intended for primary use. Use this mode if you are implementing a new design using the SWIFT SmartModel Library, if you are a new Verilog-XL user, or if you want to transition your existing design into this mode.

Two sets of v shells support SWIFT SmartModel mode: `swift` and `swift-uc`. With `swift-uc`, module names and attribute names are provided in all uppercase. The two sets of v shells provide compatibility with most third-party tools.

Historic SmartModel Mode

In Historic SmartModel mode, the models you instantiate have the characteristics of the Verilog-XL-specific SmartModels. Historic SmartModel mode is provided only for backward-compatibility for designs that use models from the Verilog-XL-specific SmartModel Library. Use the Historic SmartModel mode only if you are continuing with an older design that was captured using the Verilog-XL-specific SmartModel Library.



Note

You must use the same mode throughout a design. You cannot mix modes within a design.

Table 11 lists the different characteristics of the SWIFT and Historic SmartModel modes.

Table 11: Characteristics of Historic and SWIFT SmartModel Modes

Differences	SWIFT SmartModel Mode		Historic SmartModel Mode
	swift	swift-uc	
Model Attributes	TimingVersion ModelType DelayRange MemoryFile JEDECFile SCFFile PCLFile	TIMINGVERSION MODELTYPE DELAYRANGE MEMORYFILE JEDECFILE SCFFILE PCLFILE	COMPONENT MODELTYPE RANGE MEMORYFILE JEDECFILE CGAFILE PCLFILE
Module Names	Alphabetic characters are lowercase	Alphabetic characters are uppercase	Alphabetic characters are uppercase
Port Ordering	Numeric—for example, ports of bus A[0:11] are in this order: A0, A1, A2, A3, ..., A9, A10, A11.		Alphanumeric—for example, ports of bus A[0:11] are in this order: A0, A1, A10, A11, ..., A8, A9)
Command Names	Begin with \$lm_		Begin with \$lai_
Switch Names	Begin with +lm		Begin with +lai

Table 11: Characteristics of Historic and SWIFT SmartModel Modes

Differences	SWIFT SmartModel Mode		Historic SmartModel Mode
	swift	swift-uc	
Message Format	Refers to model names and timing version names. Timing units are in nanoseconds (ns).		Refers only to timing version names. No timing units specified.
Ignored	+laiobj ignored LAI_OBJ ignored		+laiobj ignored LAI_OBJ ignored
User-defined Windows	<i>model.v</i> files do not have to be modified		<i>model.v</i> files must be modified
Resistive Strength	Reports true resistive strength of outputs		Maps resistive strength of outputs to “strong”
Memory Windows	Supports memory windows		Does not support memory windows.

Implementing SWIFT Mode or Historic SmartModel Mode

Both the SWIFT and the Historic SmartModel modes reference the SWIFT SmartModel Library, but they use different sets of *model.v* files (vshells) to invoke the models. For each mode, there is a specific directory, shown in [Table 12](#), that contains *model.v* files to be referenced by that mode. You determine the mode that will be used both during design capture and when you invoke Verilog-XL, as follows:

1. During design capture, use the appropriate model attributes, port ordering, command channel, memory access, user-defined windows, module names, and resistive strength output expectations shown in [Table 11](#).
2. When you invoke Verilog-XL, reference the appropriate *model.v* directory using the -y switch, as described in [“Concept Design Capture” on page 67](#).

Table 12: model.v Directories

Mode	Directory
SWIFT SmartModel Mode	\$LMC_HOME/special/cds/verilog/swift
SWIFT SmartModel Mode - Uppercase	\$LMC_HOME/special/cds/verilog/swift-uc
Historic SmartModel Mode	\$LMC_HOME/special/cds/verilog/historic

Capturing and Simulating the Design

Capturing and simulating the design in Verilog-XL involves the following steps, each of which is described in detail in this section:

- [“Verilog-XL Design Flow” on page 65](#)
- [“Preparing to Use Verilog-XL” on page 66](#)
- [“Verilog-XL Design Capture” on page 66](#)
- [“Concept Design Capture” on page 67](#)
- [“Concept Procedure” on page 68](#)

Verilog-XL Design Flow

[Figure 2](#) shows the Verilog-XL design flow, with two paths. You choose one path or the other based on the task at hand:

- LMTV SWIFT SmartModel mode—recommended for new designs
- LMTV Historic SmartModel mode—recommended for older designs that use the Verilog-XL-specific SmartModel Library

You can create a design file (*design.v*) textually with an HDL description or graphically using Concept. FlexModel users should also use the appropriate Verilog wrapper file from the *model_fx/examples/verilog* directory. This file is copied to your working directory using the *flexm_setup* tool. For information on *flexm_setup*, refer to [“flexm_setup Command Reference” on page 25](#).

When Verilog-XL simulates the design, it references either the SWIFT SmartModel mode *model.v* files or the Historic SmartModel mode *model.v* files. You must specify one of these directories when you invoke Verilog-XL. A design cannot reference both directories.

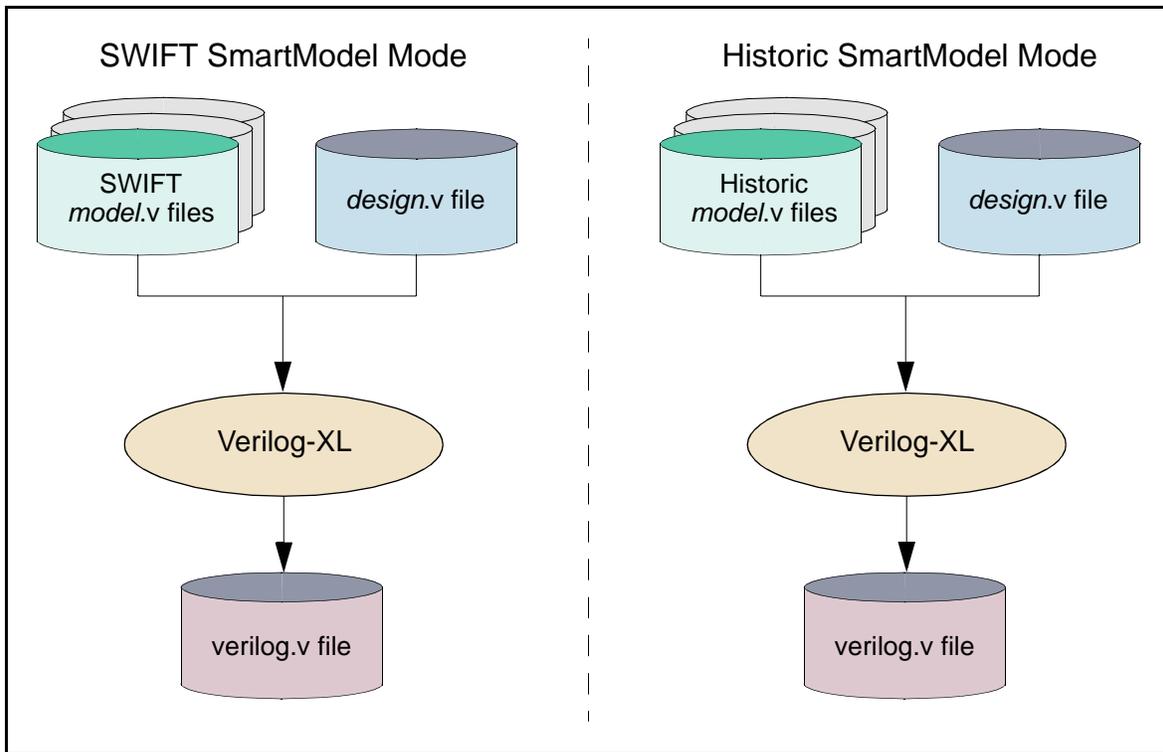


Figure 2: Verilog-XL Design Flow

Preparing to Use Verilog-XL

Before you use Verilog-XL in either mode, make sure that your executable search path points to the Verilog-XL executable that contains the LMTV interface.

Verilog-XL Design Capture

You instantiate models from the SWIFT SmartModel Library by creating HDL descriptions for Verilog-XL. The following example shows the Verilog-XL code for instantiating a simple NAND gate (ttl00) in a *design.v* file for the LMTV SWIFT SmartModel mode. For instance U1, the `TimingVersion` and `DelayRange` parameter values have both been changed from the defaults. For instance U2, only the `DelayRange` attribute value has been changed from the default.

```
top_mod contains:
module TOP_MOD;
defparam
  U1.TimingVersion = "54F00-FAI",
  U1.DelayRange   = "min",
  U2.DelayRange   = "typ";
```

```
ttl00 U1(.I1(clk), .I2(enable), .O1(output));
ttl00 U2(.I1(clk), .I2(enable), .O1(output));
endmodule
```

The following example shows the Verilog-XL code for the same instantiation, but for the LMTV Historic SmartModel mode. Notice that the attribute names are different and that the alphabetic characters in the model name are upper case.

```
top_mod contains:
module TOP_MOD;
  defparam
    U1.COMPONENT= "54F00-FAI",
    U1.RANGE= "min",
    U2.RANGE= "typ";

  TTL00 U1(.I1(clk), .I2(enable), .O1(output));
  TTL00 U2(.I1(clk), .I2(enable), .O1(output));
endmodule
```

Concept Design Capture

As an alternative, you can capture a design using the Concept design flow (refer to [Figure 3](#)). First, diagram the design in Concept using a custom symbol library.

Next, execute `vloglink` to generate the `vloglink.v` file. Finally, for the SWIFT SmartModel mode only, execute the `mod_param` utility provided by Synopsys to convert model instance parameter names to SWIFT-compliant names in the `vloglink.v` file.

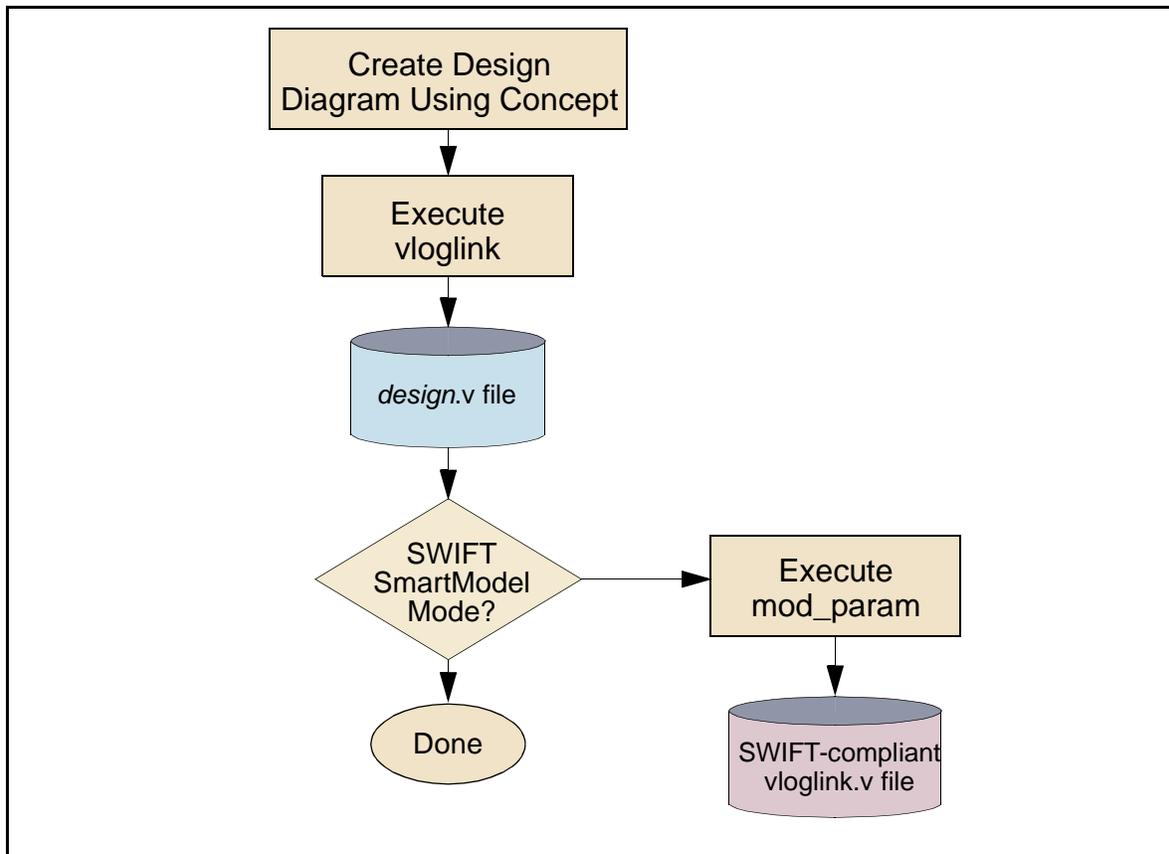


Figure 3: Concept Design Flow

Concept Procedure

To create a design file graphically using Concept, follow these steps:

1. Merge the file into your master.local file.
2. Invoke Concept, instantiate the symbols, and write the schematic.
3. Execute vloglink.
4. If you are using the SWIFT SmartModel mode, use one of these methods to prepare vloglink.v for simulation:
 - Run verilog with the -u switch
 - or--**
 - Run mod_param on the vloglink.v file

This converts parameter names to SWIFT-compliant form. (For more information about the mod_param utility, run mod_param with the -h to display the usage message.)

Using SmartModel Windows with Verilog-XL

SmartModel Windows, also referred to as “Windows,” is a SmartModel Library feature that allows you to view and change the contents of internal registers during simulation, for models and simulators (including Verilog-XL) that support this feature. For general information about SmartModel Windows, refer to the *SmartModel Library User’s Manual*. This section provides information about using SmartModel windows with Verilog-XL.

LMTV SmartModel Windows Commands

The following commands allow you to work with SmartModel Windows during Verilog-XL simulation. Commands are instance-specific, which means that they must be issued once for each instance. These commands are most often placed in the testbench, but can also be issued at the command line. For details and examples, refer to the specific command descriptions.

\$lm_monitor_enable(), \$lai_enable_monitor()

Enables SmartModel Windows for one or more window elements in a specified model instance. Can be used in both Historic and SWIFT SmartModel modes, but is recommended for use only in Historic SmartModel mode.

\$lm_monitor_disable(), \$lai_disable_monitor()

Disables SmartModel Windows for one or more window elements in a specified model instance. Can be used in both Historic and SWIFT SmartModel modes, but is recommended for use only in Historic SmartModel mode.

\$lm_monitor_vec_map(), \$lm_monitor_vec_unmap()

Enables or disables a direct mapping between a user-defined variable and a window element in a specified model instance. The window element can be part of an array. Can be used only in SWIFT SmartModel mode.

\$lm_status(), \$lai_status()

Displays the names and values of internal windows for a specified model instance. Can be used in both Historic and SWIFT SmartModel modes.

Creating User-Defined Window Elements

You can create user-defined window elements only for SmartCircuit FPGA or CPLD models. The way you create these window elements depends on whether you will access the window elements using `$lm_monitor_enable()`, which can be used in either the Historic or the SWIFT SmartModel mode; or `$lm_monitor_vec_map()`, which can be used only in SWIFT SmartModel mode.

Both `$lm_monitor_enable()` and `$lm_monitor_vec_map()` need to be given the names of the model's window elements. However, these two commands receive the window element names differently, as follows:

- The `$lm_monitor_enable()` command expects to find the window element names in the *model.v* files. Therefore, before invoking `$lm_monitor_enable()`, you must use `ccn_report` to modify the *model.v* files so that they contain the window element names. For details on how to use the `ccn_report` tool, refer to the [SmartModel Library User's Manual](#).
- The `$lm_monitor_vec_map()`, on the other hand, expects to be passed the window element names through its own `window_element` argument, and does not look in the *model.v* files. Therefore, you do not need to create modified *model.v* files before executing the `$lm_monitor_vec_map()` command.

For more information about creating window elements using auto windows, refer to the [SmartModel Library User's Manual](#).

In Historic SmartModel Mode

In Historic SmartModel mode, you can access user-defined windows only by using the `$lm_monitor_enable()` command. This means that you must create user-defined windows for SmartCircuit FPGA and CPLD models by creating modified *model.v* files.

1. If you do not already have a compiled configuration netlist (CCN) file, generate one by executing `smartccn` on your design. For details on how to use the `smartccn` tool, refer to the [SmartModel Library User's Manual](#).
2. Generate a windows definition file by executing `ccn_report` on your CCN file, as shown in the following example.

```
% ccn_report ccn_filename -m model_name -A1 windows_file
```

3. Generate a modified *model.v* file that contains the window information by executing `ccn_report` again, as shown in the following example.

```
% ccn_report ccn_filename -m model_name -v -w windows_file \  
-y $LMC_HOME/special/cds/verilog/historic \  
-mn module_name -o modified_model.v
```

4. Add the windows definition file to your Model Command File (MCF) in the form of a `do` command statement, as follows:

```
do windows_file
```

5. Make sure that your design references the *modified_model.v* file.

In SWIFT SmartModel Mode

In SWIFT SmartModel mode, you can access user-defined windows either through `$lm_monitor_enable()` or `$lm_monitor_vec_map()`. The `$lm_monitor_enable()` command is provided in SWIFT SmartModel mode for backward compatibility. We recommend that you use this command only for existing designs. The `$lm_monitor_vec_map()` command is intended for use with new designs.

Follow the same procedure as described in [“Historic SmartModel Mode” on page 63](#) except that in Step 3, when invoking `ccn_report`, use this value for the `-y` argument:

```
-y $LMC_HOME/special/cds/verilog/swift
```

Accessing Window Elements

The way you access SmartModel window elements depends on whether you are running in SWIFT mode or Historic SmartModel mode. The following sections provide instructions for both modes.

In Historic SmartModel Mode

In Historic SmartModel mode, you can access only scalar window elements. You cannot access the vectored memory window elements available in SWIFT SmartModel mode. You read and write to predefined window elements using the `$lm_monitor_enable()` or `$lai_enable_monitor()` commands. To access window elements in Historic SmartModel mode, follow these steps.

1. Enable SmartModel Windows for the model instance, either for specific window elements or for all window elements. For example, to enable SmartModel Windows for instance U4 for all window elements, use this command:

```
$lm_monitor_enable (U4);
```

2. To enable only window elements A_REG and D_REG for U4, use this command:

```
$lm_monitor_enable (U1, "A_REG", "D_REG");
```

3. To read from a specific window element, use the `$monitor`, `$strobe`, `$write`, and `$display Verilog` commands. For more information, refer to the Cadence documentation.
4. To display the contents of all window elements, use `$lm_status` (or `$lai_status`). For example, to display all window elements for instance U1, use this command:

```
$lm_status("U1");
```

The information is returned in the following format:

```
Note: SmartModel Windows Status:
      INREG "Input Register":000
      OUTREG "Output Register"000
      IO_INREG "I/O Input Register":000
      HREG "Hidden Register":0
```

5. To write to a window element, assign a value to the window element, in this format:

```
instance.window_element=value
```

For example, to clear Bit 3 of the window element HREG in the instance U1 (assuming that HREG has write access), use this command:

```
U1.HREG[3]=0;
```



Note

Refer to the individual model datasheets for information about the read/write capabilities of model window elements.

In SWIFT SmartModel Mode

In SWIFT SmartModel mode, you can use the \$lm_monitor_enable() or \$lai_enable_monitor() commands to monitor scalar windows, in exactly the same way as described in [“In Historic SmartModel Mode” on page 71](#). However, as before, you cannot use these commands to access vectored memory windows.

To use memory windows, available in SWIFT but not in Historic SmartModel mode, you must use the \$lm_monitor_vec_map() command. This command works for both scalar and vectored windows.



Hint

For simplicity, when implementing new designs in SWIFT SmartModel mode, use the \$lm_monitor_vec_map() command for both scalar and vectored windows applications. It is best not to use the \$lm_monitor_enable() or \$lai_enable_monitor() commands at all.

To access window elements using the \$lm_monitor_vec_map() command, follow these steps:

1. Define a register for the window element. You can give the register the same name as the window element, or a different name. For example, to define the register MY_A_REG to map to the 32-bit register A_REG, you could use this definition:

```
reg [31:0] MY_A_REG;
```

2. Enable the window element and map it to the register. For example, to enable the window element A_REG for instance U1 and map A_REG to the register MY_A_REG, you could use this command:

```
$lm_monitor_vec_map (MY_A_REG, U1, "A_REG");
```

3. To read from a window element, use any appropriate Verilog command to examine the contents of the register mapped to that window element. For example, to read the contents of window element A_REG, you could use this command:

```
$display ("Address is %b", MY_A_REG);
```

4. To write to a window element, assign a value to the register mapped to that window element. For example, to set Bit 4 of the window element A_REG you could use this command:

```
MY_A_REG[4]=1;
```

Example 1

The following example shows the predefined scalar window elements w0 and w2, as they might appear in a typical testbench.

```
reg MY_VAR_W0; // users can choose descriptive variable
reg MY_VAR_W2; // names to fit their applications.
// the next two lines map the variable names to the
// window elements and enable the window elements.
$lm_monitor_vec_map( MY_VAR_W0, "U1", "w0", 0 );
$lm_monitor_vec_map( MY_VAR_W2, "U1", "w2", 0 );
```

Once these window elements are set up in your testbench, you can use the graphical or monitoring capabilities of Verilog-XL to read, write, or trace the variables MY_VAR_W0 and MY_VAR_W2, which now hold the values of the window elements w0 and w2.

Example 2

The following example illustrates the use of the \$lm_monitor_vec_map() command to use memory window elements to track transactions on a memory device. In the example, a 4K x 8 bit memory model with instance name U1 has these predefined memory window elements:

- Memory array window element: MEM 4K x 8 bits
- Memory address window element: Mem_addr 12 bits
- Memory read/write window element: Mem_rw 2 bits

For more information about memory windows, refer to the [SmartModel Library User's Manual](#).

The following example code monitors the memory device. If there is a memory write, the code checks to see if the write was to any location in the address range between 'h100 and 'h200 (not allowed) and if so, issues an error message.

If the Mem_addr window element (which contains the most recently accessed address) contains unknown values, no test is performed and another error message is issued.

```

ram_model U1();
// Declare registers for the address, rw, and memory data window
elements
  reg [11:0] ADDR;
  reg [1:0] RW;
  reg [7:0] DATA;
  initial
// Map the ADDR and RW registers to the MEM_addr and MEM_rw windows
begin
  $lm_monitor_vec_map (ADDR, U1, "MEM_addr");
  $lm_monitor_vec_map (RW, U1, "MEM_rw");
end
// Whenever there is a memory transaction, check the address
// and the direction for an illegal write, and the address for
// unknown values.
always @(RW)
begin
  if (ADDR >= 'h100 && ADDR <= 'h200 && RW[1] == 0 && ADDR != 'hx)
  begin
    // There was an illegal write.
    // Temporarily map DATA register to address pointed to by ADDR
    // and enable MEM array window element to get value of data
    $lm_monitor_vec_map (DATA, U1, "MEM", ADDR);
    $display("Illegal write of value %h at address %h", DATA, ADDR);
    // Turn off enabling of memory array
    $lm_monitor_vec_unmap (DATA, U1);
  end
  if (ADDR=='hx)
    $display("Warning! Multiple simultaneous transactions.");
end

```

Customizing Model Timing

You can customize the timing of SmartModels by changing the timescale or creating custom timing files.

Changing the Timescale

As with the Verilog-XL-specific SmartModel Library, you can change the timescale of SmartModels from the default of 100 ps (picoseconds) time_units and 100 ps precision, defined in the module definitions. These values are specified by the first line of the module definition, as shown in the following example.

```
`timescale 100 ps / 100 ps
```

For both the SWIFT and Historic SmartModel modes, to change the timescale, you must copy the affected *model.v* files into a separate directory. Then modify each `'timescale` compiler directive to the desired value. When invoking the simulator, use the `-y` switch to indicate the path to the directory that contains your modified *model.v* files.

Creating Custom Timing Files

You can create and use custom timing files in both the SWIFT and Historic SmartModel modes. The procedure is the same for both. For more information on User-Defined Timing, refer to the [SmartModel Library User's Manual](#).

Simulating an Older Design Using LMTV

If you have an older design that was created using the Verilog-XL-specific SmartModel Library, you can simulate it in either mode:

- Historic SmartModel mode—in this case you do not have to modify the design
- SWIFT SmartModel mode—in this case you must modify the design

In both cases, you must make some modifications to the simulation environment as described in the following sections.

LMTV/SWIFT and Verilog-XL-Specific SmartModel Libraries

[Table 13](#) lists the differences between the LMTV/SWIFT and Verilog-XL-specific SmartModel Libraries.

Table 13: LMTV/SWIFT and Verilog-XL-specific Libraries

LMTV/SWIFT SmartModel Library	Verilog-XL-specific SmartModel Library
Uses simplified search algorithm for user-defined timing files.	Uses complex search algorithm for user-defined timing files.

Table 13: LMTV/SWIFT and Verilog-XL-specific Libraries (Continued)

LMTV/SWIFT SmartModel Library	Verilog-XL-specific SmartModel Library
In SWIFT SmartModel mode, reports true resistive strength of outputs; a switch optionally maps all to strong. In Historic SmartModel mode, mimics Verilog-XL-specific SmartModel Library.	Always maps resistive strength of outputs to strong.
Supports the Verilog \$reset and \$restart commands.	Does not support the Verilog \$reset and \$restart commands.
Always uses only \$LMC_HOME to find models; uses no other switches/variables.	Uses +laiobj, \$LAI_OBJ, +lai_lib, \$LAI_LIB as well as \$LMC_VLOG to find models.
LMTV interface does not support Cadence fault simulation.	Supports Cadence fault simulation.

Environment Modifications

This section describes environment modifications you need to make if you want to simulate an existing design in either the LMTV SWIFT or Historic SmartModel mode.

Environment Variables

For both modes, set the LMC_PATH and LMC_HOME environment variables instead of the LMC_VLOG, LAI_OBJ, and LAI_LIB environment variables, which are ignored by the LMTV interface. For more information about user configuration, refer to the [SmartModel Library Administrator's Manual](#).

Command Line Switches

The LMTV interface ignores the +laiobj and +lailib switches, regardless of which mode you are using. However, LMTV does recognize the +laiudtmsg and +lmudtmsg switches, which are equivalent.

Resistive Strength

For SWIFT SmartModel mode only, the SWIFT interface reports the true resistive strength of output pins, instead of mapping them all to “strong” as is done in the Verilog-XL-specific SmartModel Library. You might want to modify your expected output accordingly. However, if you want only a quick comparison and do not want to modify your expected output, you can revert to the Verilog-XL-specific behavior by using the +lmoldstr command switch. For more information about setting switches, refer to [“Using FlexModels with Verilog-XL” on page 78](#).

Edits to Design File

This section describes edits you need to make to your design file if you want to simulate an existing design in the LMTV SWIFT SmartModel mode.



Note

Note that `lai_*` commands are recognized by the LMTV interface, so you do not have to change command names for either mode.

Model Parameter Names

Change the parameter names to the corresponding SWIFT SmartModel mode entries, as shown in [Table 11 on page 63](#).

Model Names

Change the alphabetic parts of model names to all lower case. (If you use SWIFT-UC mode, this step is not required.)

Port Names

If you have used explicit port naming in your module instantiations (that is, if you have explicitly mapped each net name to the corresponding port name in the model instantiation statement), you do not need to do anything about port names.

If, on the other hand, you have used implicit port naming (that is, if you have listed the nets in the model instantiation statement in the same order as the ports were declared in the `.v` file), you need to ensure that your port names conform to the ordering scheme used in the SWIFT SmartModel mode, as described in [Table 11 on page 63](#).

Using FlexModels with Verilog-XL

FlexModels work with Verilog-XL using a PLI application called LMTV that is delivered in the form of a swiftpli shared library in `$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib`. If you cannot use the swiftpli, refer to [“FlexModels:PLI Static Linking with LMTV” on page 80](#).

To use the prebuilt swiftpli, follow this procedure:

1. Create a working directory and run `flexm_setup` to make copies of the model's interface and example files there, as shown in the following example:

```
% $LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
```

You must run `flexm_setup` every time you update your FlexModel installation with a new model version. [Table 14](#) lists the files that `flexm_setup` copies to your working directory.

Table 14: FlexModel Verilog-XL Files

File Name	Description	Location
<code>model_pkg.inc</code>	Verilog task definitions for FlexModel interface commands. This file also references the <code>flexmodel_pkg.inc</code> and <code>model_user_pkg.inc</code> files.	<code>workdir/src/verilog/</code>
<code>model_user_pkg.inc</code>	Clock frequency setup and user customizations.	<code>workdir/src/verilog/</code>
<code>model_fx_vxl.v</code>	A SWIFT wrapper that you can use to instantiate the model.	<code>workdir/examples/verilog/</code>
<code>model.v</code>	A bus-level wrapper around the SWIFT model. This allows you to use vectored ports for the model in your testbench.	<code>workdir/examples/verilog/</code>
<code>model_tst.v</code>	A testbench that instantiates the model and shows how to use basic model commands.	<code>workdir/examples/verilog/</code>

2. There is no need to build a Verilog executable. You can use the one from `$CDS_INST_DIR/tools/bin` by adding `$CDS_INST_DIR/tools/bin` to your path statement.
3. Update the clock frequency supplied in the `model_user_pkg.inc` file to correspond to the CLK period you want for the model. This file is located in:

```
workdir/src/verilog/model_user_pkg.inc
```

where `workdir` is your working directory.

4. Add the following line to your Verilog testbench to include FlexModel testbench interface commands in your design:

```
`include "model_pkg.inc"
```

Be sure to add this within the module from which you will be issuing FlexModel commands. The *model_pkg.inc* file also includes references to *flexmodel_pkg.inc* and *model_user_pkg.inc*, so you do not need to add them to your testbench.

5. Instantiate the FlexModel in your design, defining the ports and defparams as required (refer to the example testbench supplied with the model). You use the supplied bus-level wrapper (*model.v*) in the top-level of your design to instantiate the supplied bit-blasted wrapper (*model_fx_vxl.v*).

Example using bus-level wrapper (*model.v*) without timing:

```
model U1 ( model ports )
defparam
    U1.FlexModelId = "TMS_INST1";
```

Example using supplied bus-level wrapper (*model.v*) with timing:

```
model U1 ( model ports )
defparam
    U1.FlexTimingMode = `FLEX_TIMING_MODE_ON,
    U1.TimingVersion = "timingversion",
    U1.DelayRange = "range",
    U1.FlexModelId= "TMS_INST1";
```

6. Invoke the Verilog-XL simulator to compile and simulate your design as shown in the examples below:

UNIX

```
% verilog testbench +loadpli=swiftpli:swift_boot \
./workdir/examples/verilog/model.v \
./workdir/examples/verilog/model_fx_vxl.v \
+incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src \
+incdir+workdir/src/verilog
```

NT

```
> verilog testbench +loadpli=swiftpli:swift_boot
workdir\examples\verilog\model.v
workdir\examples\verilog\model_fx_vxl.v
+incdir+%LMC_HOME%\sim\pli\src
+incdir+workdir\src\verilog
```



Note

For information on LMTV commands that you can use with FlexModels on Verilog-XL, refer to [“LMTV Commands” on page 283](#).

FlexModels:PLI Static Linking with LMTV

If you cannot use the Synopsys-supplied `swiftpli` shared library, refer to the Cadence documentation for information on using the PLIWizard to build your own PLI library. Synopsys still ships the files needed to build your own PLI. These include:

- edited copy of `veriusers.c` in the `$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src` directory
- LMTV object (`lmtv.o`) in the `$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib` directory
- C-Pipe shared library (`slm_pli_dyn.ext`), in the `$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib` directory

If you build your own PLI, you will need to edit the `veriusers.c` file to pick up the LMTV header files as follows:

- After `#include "vxl_veriusers.h"` add:
`#include "ccl_lmtv_include.h"`
- After `/* *** add user entries here *** */` add:
`#include "ccl_lmtv_include_code.h"`

Using MemPro Models with Verilog-XL

To use MemPro models with Verilog-XL, follow this procedure. The instructions provided here are based on the assumption that you are already using Verilog-XL. These steps should be incorporated into your current process:

1. The following lines are already in the copy of `veriusers.c` at `$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src`. If you are using another `veriusers.c` file, copy these lines in. They are needed to enable the MemPro C-Pipe interface.

```
/* ----- cut here - section 1 ----- */
/* C-pipe interface */
extern int pli_slm_post();
extern int slm_transport();
extern int slm_transport_checktf();
extern int slm_inertial();
extern int slm_inertial_checktf();
/* ----- end section 1 ----- */

/* ----- cut here - section 2 ----- */
{ usertask, 0, 0, 0, pli_slm_post, 0, "$slm_post_hdl", true },
{ usertask, 0, 0, 0, pli_slm_post, 0, "$slm_post", true },
{ usertask, 0, slm_transport_checktf, 0, slm_transport, 0, "$slm_transport", true },
{ usertask, 0, slm_inertial_checktf, 0, slm_inertial, 0, "$slm_inertial", true },
/* ----- end section 2 ----- */
```

2. If you are using the MemPro C testbench, add the following to your veriusertfs.c file:
 - a. Extern declarations for your C function or functions:

```
"extern int function_1"
"extern int function_2"
...
```

- b. Entries in the veriusertfs table associating declared functions with the task or tasks containing them.

For static linking of the Verilog executable, perform the steps in [“Verilog-XL Static Linking with MemPro Models” on page 81](#). For dynamic linking, use [“Verilog-XL Dynamic Linking with MemPro Models” on page 83](#).

Verilog-XL Static Linking with MemPro Models

For static linking of the Verilog executable, perform these steps. This procedure is for UNIX only. If you are on NT, refer to [“Verilog-XL Dynamic Linking with MemPro Models” on page 83](#)

1. 1. Run vconfig to create a cr_vlog to rebuild your Verilog simulator:

```
% vconfig
```

- a. At the prompt for the path to veriusertfs.c, specify either your customized version of veriusertfs.c (as modified in step 2 on [page 81](#)) or the standard MemPro version at \$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/veriusertfs.c.
- b. At the prompt to choose the PLI application to link, select “Static with user PLI application.”
- c. At the prompt for the path to any other user files to be linked, specify *only one* of the following strings.

- i. If you *are not* using the MemPro C testbench:

```
$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/slm_pli.o
```

- ii. If you *are* using the MemPro C testbench:

```
$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/slm_pli.o \
your_c_testbench_code -I/$LMC_HOME/include
```

In either case, substitute *platform* with hp700 or sun4Solaris.

2. Edit `cr_vlog` to link the platform-specific `slm_pli.o` library to your Verilog executable for your hardware platform. Add the bold line or lines following the line that specifies the location of the `slm_pli` library.

HP-UX

```
$LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/slm_pli.o
-lld
```

Solaris

```
$LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/slm_pli.o
-ldl
```

3. Run `cr_vlog` to create your Verilog simulator executable:

```
% cr_vlog
```

4. To include MemPro testbench interface commands in your design, perform step [4a](#) or step [4b](#). If you are not using HDL or C testbenches, skip to step [5](#).
 - a. If you will be using Verilog testbench calls, add the following line to your Verilog testbench.

```
`include "mempro_pkg.v"
```

- b. If you will be using the MemPro C testbench, add the following line to your C testbench code.

```
#include "mempro_c_tb.h"
```

For more information on using the MemPro testbench interfaces, refer to the [“HDL Testbench Interface”](#) and [“C Testbench Interface”](#) chapters in the *MemPro User’s Manual*.

5. Invoke Verilog-XL to compile your libraries. In the following examples, the italicized name *verilog* is the name you provided when running `vconfig` to the “What do you want to name the Verilog-XL target?” prompt.

```
% verilog Verilog_modules MemPro_model_files \
+includir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src other_XL_command_options
```

Example:

```
% verilog tbench.v mydram.v mysram.v \
+includir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src
```

6. Instantiate MemPro models in your design. Define ports and generics as required. For information on generics used with MemPro models, refer to [“Instantiating MemPro Models” on page 32](#). For information on message levels and message level constants, refer to [“Controlling MemPro Model Messages” on page 33](#).
7. Invoke Verilog-XL on your design:

```
% verilog +turbo +includir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src design_name
```

Verilog-XL Dynamic Linking with MemPro Models

For dynamic linking of the Verilog executable, perform these steps. If you are on UNIX, start with Step 1. If you are on NT, start with Step 4.

1. If you are on UNIX, run `vconfig` to create a `cr_vlog` to rebuild your Verilog simulator:

```
% vconfig
```

- a. At the prompt to define how to write the Verilog-XL executable, select “Dynamic PLI libraries only.”

```
Please choose a target.
```

```
valid choices:  1) Stand Alone,
                2) Backplane,
                3) Verilog Export,
                4) VHDL Import,
                5) Dynamic PLI libraries only,
```

```
<Enter 1-5> [1] : 5
```

- b. At the prompt for the path to any other user files to be linked, specify *only one* of the following strings.

- i. If you *are not* using the MemPro C testbench:

```
$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/slm_pli_dyn.ext
```

- ii. If you *are* using the MemPro C testbench:

```
$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/slm_pli_dyn.ext \
your_c_testbench_code -I$LMC_HOME/include
```

In either case substitute *platform* with “hp700” or “sun4Solaris.” and *ext* with “sl” on HP and “so” on Solaris workstations.

- c. At the prompt for the path to `veriusers.c`, specify either your customized version of `veriusers.c` (as modified in step 2 on [page 81](#)) or the standard MemPro version at `$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src/veriusers.c`:

```
The user template file 'veriusers.c' must always be
included in the link statement. What is the path
name of this file ?
```

```
[/d/cds_ic4.43/solaris/tools/verilog/src/veriusers.c] : ./veriusers.c
```

2. Make sure the following lines are in your simulator build script.

HP-UX

```
$LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/slm_pli_dyn.sl
```

Solaris

```
$LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/slm_pli_dyn.so
```

- Run `cr_vlog` or your own build script to create your Verilog-XL executable:

```
% cr_vlog
```

- If you are on NT, you do not need to re-compile the NT Verilog-XL executable before using MemPro models in your designs. Instead, make sure the following locations are in your PATH:

```
%LMC_HOME%\bin
%LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib
```

- To include MemPro testbench interface commands in your design, perform step [5a](#) or step [5b](#). If you are not using HDL or C testbenches, skip to step [6](#).

- If you will be using Verilog testbench calls, add the following line to your Verilog testbench.

```
`include "mempro_pkg.v"
```

- If you will be using the MemPro C testbench, add the following line to your C testbench code.

```
#include "mempro_c_tb.h"
```

For more information on using the MemPro testbench interfaces, refer to the “[HDL Testbench Interface](#)” and “[C Testbench Interface](#)” chapters in the *MemPro User’s Manual*.

- Instantiate MemPro models in your design. Define ports and generics as required. For information on generics used with MemPro models, refer to “[Instantiating MemPro Models](#)” on page [32](#). For information on message levels and message level constants, refer to “[Controlling MemPro Model Messages](#)” on page [33](#).
- Invoke Verilog-XL on your design:

UNIX:

```
% verilog +turbo +incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src design_name
```

NT with Verilog-XL 2.7:

```
> verilog Verilog_modules MemPro_model_files
+incdir+%LMC_HOME%\sim\pli\src
+loadplil=sim_pli_2xvxl:sim_boot other_XL_command_options
```

NT with Verilog-XL 3.0 or later:

```
> verilog Verilog_modules MemPro_model_files
+incdir+%LMC_HOME%\sim\pli\src
+loadplil=sim_pli_vxl:sim_boot other_XL_command_options
```

Using Hardware Models with Verilog-XL

This section describes how to configure Release 3.5a of ModelAccess for Verilog. ModelAccess is the software you use to interface hardware models with the simulator. To dynamically link the SFI with Verilog-XL, you must have version 2.8 or later of Verilog-XL on UNIX and version 3.0 on NT. You also need Release 3.5a of ModelAccess for Verilog. The hardware modeling information is presented in the following sections of this chapter:

- [“Prerequisites” on page 85](#)
- [“The ma_verilog Software Tree” on page 86](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models” on page 87](#)

Prerequisites

If you have not already done so, perform these tasks:

- Install the Verilog-XL simulator according to instructions provided by Cadence Design Systems, Inc.
- Perform the complete installation and configuration of the hardware modeling system, including hardware and software (R3.5a or later) as outlined in the Quick Reference in Chapter 1 of either the *ModelSource Hardware Installation Guide* or the *LM-family Hardware Installation Guide*.
- Boot the modeler if it is not already booted.

The ma_verilog Software Tree

The ModelAccess for Verilog (ma_verilog) directory structure is illustrated in [Figure 4](#).

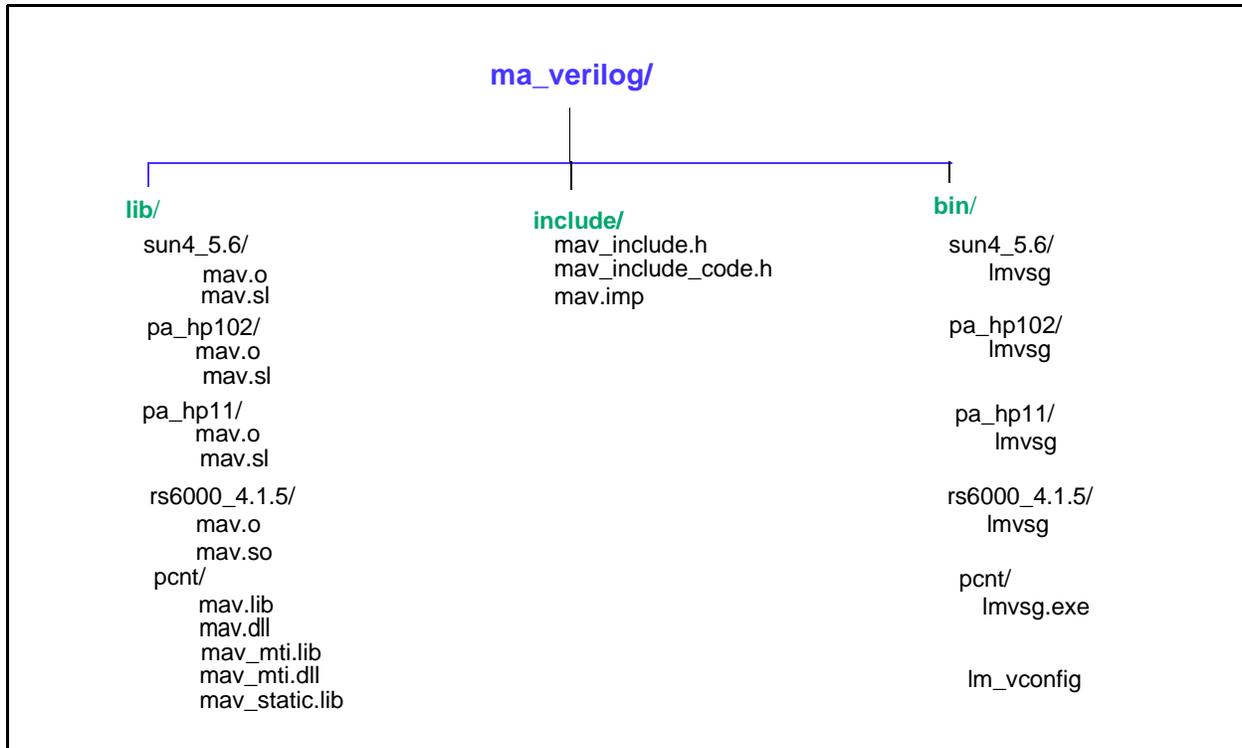


Figure 4: The ma_verilog Software Tree

Generating the Verilog-XL Model Shell

You must use the Logic Modeling Verilog Shell Generator (lmvsg) to generate new Verilog HDL shells (*model.v* files) for the hardware models you are using. Note that you cannot use any *model.v* files that might have existed prior to your use of ModelAccess for Verilog. All *model.v* files must be newly generated.

For each hardware model, both UNIX and Windows NT users issue this command at the operating system prompt:

```
% lmvsg -d destination_model.MDL
```

The complete syntax of the lmvsg command is provided in [“lmvsg Command Reference” on page 101](#).

Using Hardware Models

To instantiate hardware models in Verilog-XL, ModelAccess for Verilog maps the Cadence PLI to the Simulator Function Interface (SFI), as shown in [Figure 5](#). For information about the SFI, refer to the *Simulator Integration Manual*.

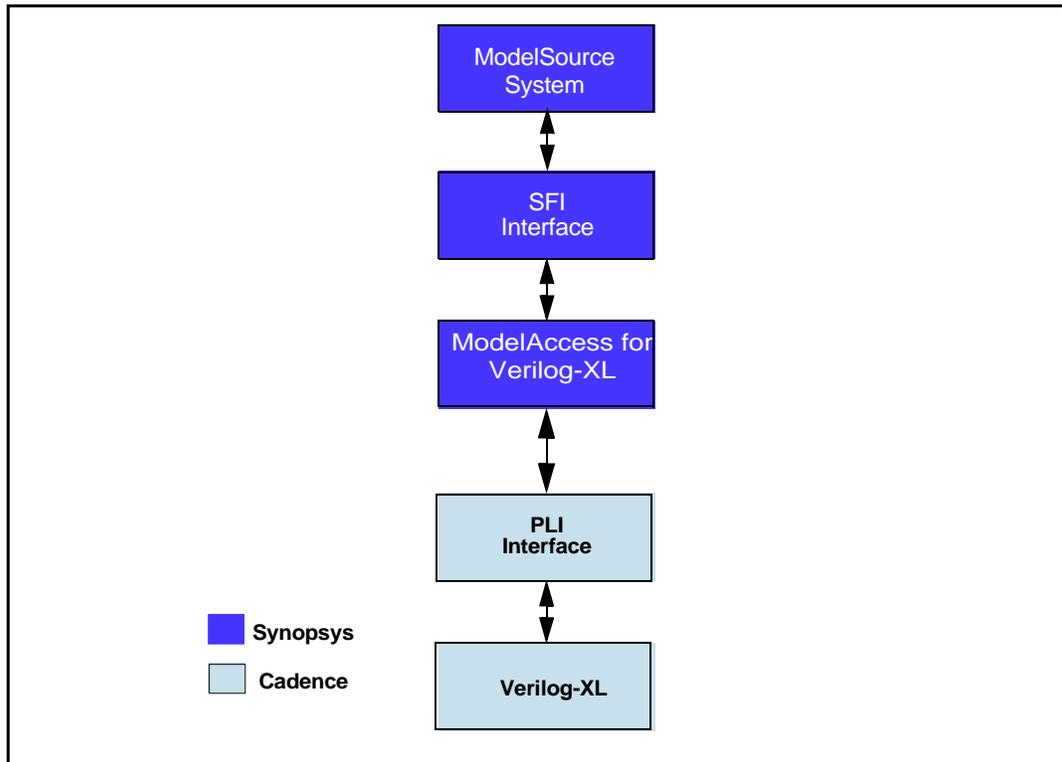


Figure 5: SFI Communication with PLI

ModelAccess for Verilog Methodology

To simulate with hardware models using ModelAccess for Verilog consists of these tasks:

- [“Simulation Example” on page 88](#)
- [“Creating the Model Shell” on page 88](#)
- [“Instantiating the Hardware Model” on page 90](#)
- [“Performance Monitoring” on page 91](#)
- [“Compiling and Simulating” on page 91](#)
- [“Examining the Output verilog.log File” on page 92](#)

Simulation Example

This simulation example illustrates how to use hardware models in a Verilog-XL simulation using ModelAccess for Verilog. This example assumes that all ModelAccess for Verilog configuration tasks have been accomplished.

Creating the Model Shell

If you use ModelAccess for Verilog, you cannot use existing *model.v* files that were generated by *crshell*; you must regenerate the *model.v* files as described.

The task of creating a model shell should have been accomplished by executing *lmvsg*, as described in [“Generating the Verilog-XL Model Shell” on page 86](#). For example, to create the model shell (*model.v* file) for the TILS299 hardware model (an 8-bit universal shift/storage register with 3-state outputs) in the current working directory, execute the following:

```
% lmvsg TILS299.MDL
```

(By default, if no destination is specified, the current working directory is the destination directory for the TILS299.v file. For complete syntax of the *lmvsg* script, refer to [“lmvsg Command Reference” on page 101](#).)

The following illustration shows the TILS299.v file that contains a listing of the model’s pin names, pin declarations, parameter declarations, and the model invocation, which references the *model.MDL* file (in this case, TILS299.MDL).

```
// Generated by lmvsg 1.000
// Copyright (c) 1984-1996 Synopsys Inc. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

`timescale 1 ns / 1 ns
`expand_vectornets

module TILS299(
  CLK , CLR , G1 , G2 , S0 , S1 , SL , SR , QA , QH , A , B ,
  C , D , E , F , G , H );

  // Pin declarations
  input  CLK ;
  input  CLR ;
  input  G1 ;
  input  G2 ;
  input  S0 ;
  input  S1 ;
  input  SL ;
  input  SR ;
  output QA ;
  reg   QA__PULL ;
  reg   QA__STRONG ;
  assign (pull0, pull1) QA = QA__PULL ;
```

```
assign QA = QA__STRONG ;
output QH ;
reg QH__PULL ;
reg QH__STRONG ;
assign (pull0, pull1) QH = QH__PULL ;
assign QH = QH__STRONG ;
inout A ;
reg A__PULL ;
reg A__STRONG ;
assign (pull0, pull1) A = A__PULL ;
assign A = A__STRONG ;
inout B ;
reg B__PULL ;
reg B__STRONG ;
assign (pull0, pull1) B = B__PULL ;
assign B = B__STRONG ;
inout C ;
reg C__PULL ;
reg C__STRONG ;
assign (pull0, pull1) C = C__PULL ;
assign C = C__STRONG ;
inout D ;
reg D__PULL ;
reg D__STRONG ;
assign (pull0, pull1) D = D__PULL ;
assign D = D__STRONG ;
inout E ;
reg E__PULL ;
reg E__STRONG ;
assign (pull0, pull1) E = E__PULL ;
assign E = E__STRONG ;
inout F ;
reg F__PULL ;
reg F__STRONG ;
assign (pull0, pull1) F = F__PULL ;
assign F = F__STRONG ;
inout G ;
reg G__PULL ;
reg G__STRONG ;
assign (pull0, pull1) G = G__PULL ;
assign G = G__STRONG ;
inout H ;
reg H__PULL ;
reg H__STRONG ;
assign (pull0, pull1) H = H__PULL ;
assign H = H__STRONG ;

// Parameter declarations
parameter ModelType = "HARDWARE";
```

```

parameter TimingVersion = "TILS299.MDL";
parameter DelayRange = "Max";

// Invoke the model
initial
begin
  $lmhw_model(
    "TILS299.MDL",
    ModelType,
    "attr", "timingversion", TimingVersion,
    "attr", "delayrange", DelayRange ,
    "in", CLK ,
    "in", CLR ,
    "in", G1 ,
    "in", G2 ,
    "in", S0 ,
    "in", S1 ,
    "in", SL ,
    "in", SR ,
    "out", QA , QA__STRONG , QA__PULL ,
    "out", QH , QH__STRONG , QH__PULL ,
    "io", A , A__STRONG , A__PULL ,
    "io", B , B__STRONG , B__PULL ,
    "io", C , C__STRONG , C__PULL ,
    "io", D , D__STRONG , D__PULL ,
    "io", E , E__STRONG , E__PULL ,
    "io", F , F__STRONG , F__PULL ,
    "io", G , G__STRONG , G__PULL ,
    "io", H , H__STRONG , H__PULL );
  end
endmodule

`autoexpand_vectornets

```

Instantiating the Hardware Model

Before instantiating a hardware model, you first examine the *model.v* file you created, to get the port names to use in the instantiation, and also to see whether you want to change any of the model's default parameters. The *model.v* files contain default values for the model parameters, which you can override using the “defparam” statement in the model instantiation.

The following example shows how to instantiate a hardware model (TILS299 in this case) in a testbench. Notice the two “defparam” statements; the definitions of the TimingVersion (TILS299A.MDL) and DelayRange (MIN) parameters in the instantiation override the default definitions in the model.v file (TILS299.MDL and MAX, respectively). In this example, TILS299A.MDL represents a custom timing version that the designer wants to use instead of the default timing version TILS299.MDL.

```

/ Instantiate UUT : ModelSource TILS299 hardware model : U1
  defparam    U1.TimingVersion="TILS299A.MDL" ;
  defparam    U1.DelayRange = "MIN" ;
TILS299 U1(.CLK (clkw),
           .CLR (clrw),
           .A  (iolw[0]),
           .B  (iolw[1]),
           .C  (iolw[2]),
           .D  (iolw[3]),
           .E  (iolw[4]),
           .F  (iolw[5]),
           .G  (iolw[6]),
           .H  (iolw[7]),
           .G1 (glw),
           .G2 (g2w),
           .QA (qalw),
           .QH (qh1w),
           .S0 (s0w),
           .S1 (s1w),
           .SL (slw),
           .SR (srw));

```

Performance Monitoring

You can monitor the performance of a hardware model and append the results to the simulator log file after simulation. To enable performance monitoring, in the window where you are running the simulator, enter the following:

```
% setenv LM_OPTION "monitor_performance"
```

For more information, refer to “Performance Monitoring” in the [ModelSource User’s Manual](#).

Compiling and Simulating

UNIX users accomplish this task by executing the Verilog-XL executable previously built, referencing the testbench and the *model.v* file, as in the following example:

```
% verilog TILS299.v tbench.v +loadplil=mav:mav_boot
```

As Verilog executes, it outputs progress, status, and error messages to the screen and saves the transcript to a file named `verilog.log`, which you can examine if necessary for troubleshooting.

Examining the Output `verilog.log` File

After echoing the command that invoked Verilog, and the copyright and source information, Verilog announces its progress as it compiles the input files. When the prompt `C1>` is issued, the simulator is waiting at time 0 for you to enter a command. Typing a period (`.`), which means “continue”, starts the simulation run. Typing “`$finish;`” at the prompt terminates the simulation session.

Notice in particular these lines, which state the release numbers of ModelAccess for Verilog and SFI:

```
Runtime, ModelAccess for Verilog-XL R3.5a
SFI Copyright 1988-2000 Synopsys, Incorporated.; 08/30/00; R3.5a
```

If you are troubleshooting and call Synopsys Technical Support for help, you will be asked for the SFI release number (in this case, R3.5a). (For instructions on contacting Synopsys Technical Support, refer to [“Getting Help” on page 14.](#)) The following illustration shows an example `verilog.log` file without errors.

```
Host command: verilog.lmv
Command arguments:
    -s
    TILS299.v
    tbench.v

VERILOG-XL 2.2.1 log file created Jan  8, 1997  14:14:00
VERILOG-XL 2.2.1   Jan  8, 1997  14:14:00

...
...
Compiling source file "TILS299.v"
Compiling source file "tbench.v"

    Runtime, ModelAccess for Verilog R2.0
    SFI Copyright 1988-1996 Synopsys, Incorporated.; 05 Sep 1996;
R3.3a
Type ? for help
C1 > .
...
...
L47 "tbench.v": $stop at simulation time 4200
C1 > $finish;
C1: $finish at simulation time 4200
54 simulation events + 10 accelerated events
```

```
CPU time: 0.4 secs to compile + 0.2 secs to link + 0.5 secs in
simulation
End of VERILOG-XL 2.2.1   Jan  8, 1997  14:15:09
```

Optional Capabilities During Simulation

During simulation, you can optionally enable timing measurement and test vector logging.

Timing Measurement

LM-family modeling systems can measure input-to-output propagation delays on a hardware model. You enable timing measurement using the command `$lm_timing_measurements()`, described in “[\\$lm_timing_measurements Command Reference](#)” on page 98.



Note

Timing measurement is not supported for ModelSource 3200 and 3400.

The following illustration shows an example of timing measurement for the TILS299 model. The six lines of code following “SIMULATION run time duration” turn on timing measurement, measure for 4200 timing units, then turn off timing measurement. The timing information is saved in the file TILS299.TIM.

Test Vector Logging

ModelSource and LM-family modeling systems can capture and write to a file the input stimuli presented to a hardware model, as well as the resulting sampled output values.

Test vectors are useful for debugging a simulation and for verifying the functionality of a hardware model. You enable test vector logging by using the command `$lm_log_test_vectors()`, described in “[\\$lm_log_test_vectors Command Reference](#)” on page 96.

The following illustration also shows an example of test vector logging for the model TILS299. The six lines of code following the timing measurement enable test vector logging, implement the logging for 4200 time units (the duration of the simulation), and then disable the logging. The test vectors are saved in a file named hwm299.vec.

```
// Instantiate UUT : ModelSource TILS299 hardware model : U1
TILS299 U1(.CLK (clkw),
           .CLR (clr),
           .A  (iolw[0]),
           .B  (iolw[1]),
           .C  (iolw[2]),
           .D  (iolw[3]),
           .E  (iolw[4]),
```

```

        .F  (iolw[5]),
        .G  (iolw[6]),
        .H  (iolw[7]),
        .G1 (g1w),
        .G2 (g2w),
        .QA (qalw),
        .QH (qhlw),
        .S0 (s0w),
        .S1 (s1w),
        .SL (slw),
        .SR (srw));
// SIMULATION run time duration
initial
begin
  $lm_timing_measurements ("tbench.U1", 1, "TILS299.TIM");
  #4200
  $lm_timing_measurements ("tbench.U1", 0, "TILS299.TIM");
end
initial
begin
  $lm_log_test_vectors("tbench.U1",1,"hwm299.vec");
  #4200 $stop;
  $lm_log_test_vectors("tbench.U1",0,"hwm299.vec");
end

```

The Test Vector Log File

This next illustration shows part of a test vector log file, hwm299.vec.

```

# test_vector_format 2
# test TILS299
# time stamp = 1 nanosecond
# runtime_modeler_software R3.3a
# simulator_function_interface R3.3a
SR          1      I
SL          2      I
...
#patterns { IIIIIIIIBBBBBBBBOO }
#         {      ---          }
#         { SSSSCGGCHGFEDCBAQQ }
#         { RL10L21L/////////HA }
#         {      K  RQQQQQQQQ   }
#         {      HGFEDCBA     }
INIT DDDDDUUDTTTTTTTT
      ZZZZZZZZLL
0    DDDDUDDDTTTTTTTTT
      LLLLLLLLLLL
30   DDDDUDDDDDDDDDDDD
50   DDDDDDDDDDDDDDDDD
100  DDDDUDDDDDDDDDDDD

```

```

                LLLLLLLLLL
150  DDDDDDUDDDDDDDD
                LLLLLLLLLL
200  DDDDUDDUDDDDDDDD
                LLLLLLLLLL
250  DDDDDDUDDDDDDDD
300  DDDDUDDUDDDDDDDD
                LLLLLLLLLL
350  DDUUDDDUDDDDDDDD
                zzzzzzzzLL
355  DDUUDUUUDDDDDDDD
                zzzzzzzzLL
...
...

```

Understanding the Test Vector File

The test vector file is written in Logic Modeling test vector format. Symbols for input and output values are defined in [Table 15](#).

Table 15: Test Vector Symbols

Symbol	Input/Output	Definition
U	Input	Drive hard 1
D	Input	Drive hard 0
u	Input	Drive soft (resistive) 1
d	Input	Drive soft (resistive) 0
T	Input	Drive floating level
N	Input	Drive unknown level
H	Output	Sense hard 1
L	Output	Sense hard 0
h	Output	Sense soft (resistive) 1
l	Output	Sense soft (resistive) 0
Z	Output	Sense floating level. Used for an I/O pin in the input state whose last driven value was 1 (either U or u)
z	Output	Sense floating level. Used in two cases: for an I/O pin in the input state whose last driven value was 0 (either D or d), or for an output pin that is not driving.

Table 15: Test Vector Symbols (Continued)

Symbol	Input/Output	Definition
X	Output	Sense unknown value. Unknowns on outputs are generated by unknown propagation, value forcing, voltage unknowns, or inconsistent unknowns.
?	Output	Sense any level (“don’t care”).

Saving and Restarting the Simulation State

The Verilog-XL \$save() task saves the complete simulation data structure into a specified file. The saved data structure includes the pattern memory for each hardware model simulation instance.

The \$restart() task restores the complete Verilog-XL simulation from the specified file. The pattern memory for each hardware model simulation instance is restored into the hardware modeler’s pattern memory.

Linking the SFI Debug Library

By default, ModelAccess for Verilog dynamically links the non-debug version of the SFI library. If you want to use the SFI library’s debug version for troubleshooting, define the environment variable HOSTDEBUG. For information about setting and using HOSTDEBUG, refer to the [Simulator Integration Manual](#). For troubleshooting assistance, contact Synopsys Technical Support (for instructions, refer to [“Getting Help” on page 14](#)).

\$lm_log_test_vectors Command Reference

The \$lm_log_test_vectors command enables test vector logging for a specified instance, and specifies a file name for the test vector log.

Syntax

\$lm_log_test_vectors (“*instance_path*”, *on_off*, “*filename*”)

Arguments

<i>instance_path</i>	Specifies the pathname of the model instance for which test vector logging is to be enabled or disabled.
<i>on_off</i>	Indicates whether test vector logging is to be enabled or disabled. Allowed values are 1 to enable logging, or 0 (the default) to disable logging.

filename Specifies the file name to be used for the test vector log.

Description

Enables test vector logging for a specified instance and specifies a filename for the test vector log. By default, test vector logging is not performed. When test vector logging is on, the pin value information created during the simulation for the specified device instance is written in test vector file format to *filename*.

For detailed information about test vector logging, refer to the [ModelSource User's Manual](#) or the [LM-family Modeler Manual](#).

Example

The following example enables test vector logging for the instance “U1”, and saves the test vector log in the file “U1.log”.

```
$lm_log_test_vectors ("Tbench.U1", 1, "U1.log");
```

\$lm_loop_instance Command Reference

The \$lm_loop_instance command enables the loop mode for a specified model instance.

Syntax

```
$lm_loop_instance ("instance_path")
```

Arguments

instance_path Specifies the pathname of the model instance for which the loop mode is to be enabled.

Description

Enables the loop mode for a specified instance. In loop mode, the hardware modeler repeatedly plays to the physical device the pattern history of the specified device instance. This command is most often used to analyze the behavior of a device and its pattern history with an oscilloscope or logic analyzer connected to the device.

Once in loop mode, the interface prompts you to press the Return key to exit the loop mode.

Examples

The following example turns on loop mode for the “U1” model instance.

```
$lm_loop_instance ( "U1" );
```

The following message is displayed while the instance is in loop mode.

```
Entering loop mode for hardware model instance U1
Press Return to terminate loop mode.
```

\$lm_timing_information Command Reference

The `$lm_timing_information` command lets you override the hardware modeler's default handling of timing information for a specified model instance.

Syntax

```
$lm_timing_information ("instance_path", "timing_option");
```

Arguments

<i>instance_path</i>	Specifies the Verilog pathname of the instance whose timing information is to be modified.
<i>timing_option</i>	Allowed values are “nodelay” to ignore all delay information, “delay” to process all delay information, “notimingchecks” to ignore all timing checks, and “timingchecks” to apply all timing checks. The defaults are “delay” and “timingchecks”.

Description

The `$lm_timing_information` command allows you to override the hardware modeler's default handling of timing information for a specified model instance. By default, the hardware modeler processes all delay information and applies all timing checks. You can decrease model evaluation time by disabling these activities. The hardware modeler does not process information that is not needed by the simulator.

Example

The following example disables timing checks for the “U1” model instance.

```
$lm_timing_information ("U1", "notimingchecks");
```

\$lm_timing_measurements Command Reference

The `$lm_timing_measurements` command enables timing measurements for a specified model instance. It is not supported for ModelSource 3200 and 3400.

Syntax

```
$lm_timing_measurements ("instance_path", on_off, "filename")
```

Arguments

<i>instance_path</i>	Specifies the pathname of the model instance for which timing measurement is to be enabled or disabled.
<i>on_off</i>	Indicates whether test vector logging is to be enabled or disabled. Allowed values are 1 to enable logging, or 0 (the default) to disable logging.
<i>filename</i>	Specifies the file name to be used for the test vector log.

Description

The `$lm_timing_measurements` command enables timing measurement for a specified model instance. By default, timing measurement is not performed. Instead, the hardware modeler uses the delay values provided in the .DLY file in the Shell Software. When timing measurement is enabled, the hardware modeler returns to the simulator and logs to the specified file the actual delays measured from the device.

Example

The following example enables timing measurements for the "U1" model instance and saves the timing measurement log in the "U1.log" file.

```
$lm_timing_measurements ( "Tbench.U1", 1, "U1.log");
```

\$lm_unknowns Command Reference

The `$lm_unknowns` command lets you override the hardware modeler's default handling of unknown values for specified instances or pins, or for all hardware model instances in the simulation.

Syntax

```
$lm_unknowns ("option=value" [,"option=value",...] [, "device_or_pin"])
```

Arguments

You can use the following values for "option=value":

<code>propagate=<u>yes</u> no</code>	When "yes" (the default), enables the "on_unknown propagate" statement, if there is one, in the model's options file (for example, TILS299.OPT) for the specified instance or pin, or for all hardware model instances in the simulation. Set
--	---

propagate=no if you want to disable or override the “on_unknown propagate” statement in the .OPT file for a specific instance or pin.



Note

If there is no “on_unknown propagate” statement in the model’s .OPT file, unknown propagation is disabled even if you use “\$lm_unknowns propagate=yes”. For the “propagate=yes” option to have an effect, there must be an “on_unknown propagate” statement in the model’s .OPT file. For more information about the on_unknown statement, refer to the [Shell Software Reference Manual](#).

value=previous | high | low | float

Specifies the value to be passed to the device when an unknown value is passed to the modeler. The default is “previous”, meaning that if the simulator sets an input pin to “unknown”, the modeler drives the input to its previous value. For more information, refer to the description of set_previous in the on_unknown reference pages in the [Shell Software Reference Manual](#).

sequence_count=*num_sequences*

Specifies the number of random sequences to propagate unknowns through the hardware model. The *num_sequences* setting is an integer of value 0 (the default) through 20. The default value, 0, is usually sufficient; setting a higher value ensures that unknowns will be propagated, but uses more pattern memory.

random_seed=*seed_value*

Specifies the initial seed for the random sequence generator. *seed_value* is an integer of value 0 (the default) through 65535.

device_or_pin

Specifies the Verilog pathname of a device or pin whose unknown values are to be translated into the value specified by *value*. The default is to apply the statement to all hardware model instances in the simulation.

Description

The `$lm_unknowns` command lets you override the hardware modeler's default handling of unknown values for specified model instances or pins, or for all hardware model instances in the simulation. By default, the hardware modeler translates all unknown values to "previous" before passing them to the device. Using this command, you can specify values of high (1), low (0) or float (?), or disable unknown propagation, for a specified instance or pin, or for all hardware model instances in the simulation if no instance or pin is given. For detailed information about unknown handling, refer to the [Shell Software Reference Manual](#).

Examples

The following example disables unknown propagation and causes a low value to be passed to the device when an unknown value is passed to the hardware modeler for the instance "Tbench.U1."

```
$lm_unknowns ("propagate=no", "value=low", "Tbench.U1")
```

The following example disables unknown propagation, causes a high value to be passed to the device when an unknown value is passed to the modeler, specifies 20 random sequences to propagate unknowns through the hardware model, and specifies 200 as the seed for the random sequence generator, for all hardware model instances in the simulation.

```
$lm_unknowns ("propagate=yes", "value=high", "sequence_count=20",  
"random_seed=200")
```

Imvsg Command Reference

For a specified hardware model the `lmsvg` script creates a `model.v` file and places it in the specified destination directory.

Syntax

```
lmsvg [-d destination] [-i] [-v vector_path] [-h] model.MDL
```

Arguments

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <code>-d <i>destination</i></code> | Specifies the destination directory in which to store the generated <code>model.v</code> file. The default is the current directory. |
| <code>-i</code> | Generates a warning if a pin name is an illegal Verilog identifier. By default, no warning is issued. |
| <code>-v <i>vector_path</i></code> | Specifies the pathname to the file containing a list of vectors. |

<code>-h</code>	Displays the online help for this command.
<code>model.MDL</code>	Specifies the name of the MDL file of the hardware model whose <code>model.v</code> file is to be generated.

Description

The `lmvsg` script creates a `model.v`, in the destination directory. The model's pin names may not be legal Verilog identifiers. If a pin name is found that is not a legal Verilog identifier, `lmvsg` escapes the illegal name (for example, the pin name “-CLR” becomes “\ -CLR”.) and, if the `-i` switch was issued, displays a warning message.

If a pin alias is defined in the `model.NAM` file, the pin alias is used as the pin name. For information about editing the `model.NAM` file, refer to the [ModelSource User's Manual](#).

By default, `lmvsg` generates a module that contains a port for each logical pin. If you want the module to use vectors for buses, you can provide a file containing a list of the vectors. For example, if a device contains a 32-bit address bus, the default behavior of `lmvsg` is to generate a module with a port list containing the ports A0, A1, ..., A31. You can use the `-v` switch to name a file containing the statement “A[31:0]”. `lmvsg` then generates the module using a 32-bit vector for the address bus.

4

Using NC-Verilog with Synopsys Models

Overview

This chapter explains how to use SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models with NC-Verilog. The procedures are organized into the following major sections:

- [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 103](#)
- [“Using SmartModels with NC-Verilog” on page 105](#)
- [“Using FlexModels with NC-Verilog” on page 106](#)
- [“Using MemPro Models with NC-Verilog on UNIX” on page 109](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models with NC-Verilog” on page 111](#)

Setting Environment Variables

First, set the basic environment variables. If you are not using one of the model types, skip that step. In some cases the procedures that follow in this chapter include steps for setting additional environment variables.

1. Set the LMC_HOME variable to the location of your SmartModel, FlexModel, and MemPro model installation tree, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LMC_HOME path_to_models_installation
```

2. Set the `LM_LICENSE_FILE` or `SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE` environment variable to point to the product authorization file, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LM_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
% setenv SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

You can put license keys for multiple products (for example, SmartModels and hardware models) into the same authorization file. If you need to keep separate authorization files for different products, use a colon-separated list (UNIX) or semicolon-separated list (NT) to specify the search path in your variable setting.



Caution

Do not include `la_dmon`-based authorizations in the same file with `snpslmd`-based authorizations. If you have authorizations that use `la_dmon`, keep them in a separate license file that uses a different license server (`lmgrd`) process than the one you use for `snpslmd`-based authorizations.

3. If you are using the hardware modeler, set the `LM_DIR` and `LM_LIB` environment variables, as shown in the following examples:

```
% setenv LM_DIR hardware_model_install_path/sms/lm_dir
% setenv LM_LIB hardware_model_install_path/sms/models: \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/maps
```

If you put your models in a directory other than the default of `/sms/models`, modify the above variable setting accordingly.

4. Set the `CDS_INST_DIR` variable to the location of your Cadence installation tree, as shown in the following example, and make sure that NC-Verilog is set up properly in your environment:

```
% setenv CDS_INST_DIR path_to_Cadence_installation
```

5. Depending on your platform, set your load library variable to point to the platform-specific directory in `$LMC_HOME`, as shown in the following examples:

Solaris:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

Linux:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

AIX:

```
% setenv LIBPATH $LMC_HOME/lib/ibmrs.lib:$LIBPATH
```

HP-UX:

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib:$SHLIB_PATH
```

NT:

Make sure that %LMC_HOME%\lib\pcent.lib is in the Path user variable.

Using SmartModels with NC-Verilog

SmartModels work with NC-Verilog using a PLI application called LMTV that is delivered in the form of a swiftpli shared library in \$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib. If you cannot use the swiftpli, refer to [“Static Linking with LMTV” on page 106](#).

To use the prebuilt swiftpli, follow this procedure:

1. Instantiate SmartModels in your design, defining the ports and defparams as required. For details on required SmartModel SWIFT parameters and model instantiation examples, refer to [“Using SmartModels with SWIFT Simulators” on page 18](#).
2. There is no need to build a Verilog executable. You can use the one from \$CDS_INST_DIR/tools/bin by adding it to your path statement.
3. To use the swiftpli shared library, invoke the NC-Verilog simulator to compile and simulate your design as shown in the following examples:

UNIX

```
% ncoverilog testbench model.v +loadpli1=swiftpli:swift_boot \  
+incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src
```

NT

```
> ncoverilog testbench model.v +loadpli1=swiftpli:swift_boot \  
+incdir+%LMC_HOME%\sim\pli\src
```



Note

If you are using ncelab and ncsim, use the -loadpli1 switch instead of the +loadpli1 switch.

For information on LMTV commands that you can use with SmartModels on NC-Verilog, refer to [“LMTV Command Reference” on page 281](#).

Static Linking with LMTV

If you cannot use the Synopsys-supplied swiftpli shared library, refer to the Cadence documentation for information on using the PLIWizard to build your own PLI library. Synopsys still ships the files needed to build your own PLI. These include:

- edited copy of veriuser.c in the \$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src directory
- LMTV object (lmtv.o) in the \$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib directory

If you build your own PLI, you will need to edit the veriuser.c file to pick up the LMTV header files as follows:

```
a. After #include "vxl_veriuser.h" add:
#include "ccl_lmtv_include.h"
b. After /*** add user entries here ***/ add:
#include "ccl_lmtv_include_code.h"
```

Using FlexModels with NC-Verilog

FlexModels work with NC-Verilog using a PLI application called LMTV that is delivered in the form of a swiftpli shared library in \$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib. If you cannot use the swiftpli, refer to [“Static Linking with LMTV” on page 108](#).

To use the prebuilt swiftpli, follow this procedure:

1. Create a working directory and run flexm_setup to make copies of the model's interface and example files there, as shown in the following example:

```
% $LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
```

You must run flexm_setup every time you update your FlexModel installation with a new model version. [Table 16](#) lists the files that flexm_setup copies to your working directory.

Table 16: FlexModel NC-Verilog Files

File Name	Description	Location
<i>model_pkg.inc</i>	Verilog task definitions for FlexModel interface commands. This file also references the flexmodel_pkg.inc and model_user_pkg.inc files.	<i>workdir/src/verilog/</i>
<i>model_user_pkg.inc</i>	Clock frequency setup and user customizations.	<i>workdir/src/verilog/</i>
<i>model_fx_vxl.v</i>	A SWIFT wrapper that you can use to instantiate the model.	<i>workdir/examples/verilog/</i>

Table 16: FlexModel NC-Verilog Files (Continued)

File Name	Description	Location
<i>model.v</i>	A bus-level wrapper around the SWIFT model. This allows you to use vectored ports for the model in your testbench.	<i>workdir/examples/verilog/</i>
<i>model_tst.v</i>	A testbench that instantiates the model and shows how to use basic model commands.	<i>workdir/examples/verilog/</i>

- Update the clock frequency supplied in the *model_user_pkg.inc* file to correspond to the CLK period you want for the model. This file is located in:

```
workdir/src/verilog/model_user_pkg.inc
```

where *workdir* is your working directory.

- Add the following line to your Verilog testbench to include FlexModel testbench interface commands in your design:

```
`include "model_pkg.inc"
```

Be sure to add this within the module from which you will be issuing FlexModel commands. The *model_pkg.inc* file also includes references to *flexmodel_pkg.inc* and *model_user_pkg.inc*, so you need not add them to your testbench.

- Instantiate FlexModels in your design, defining the ports and defparams as required (refer to the example testbench supplied with the model). You use the supplied bus-level wrapper (*model.v*) in the top-level of your design to instantiate the supplied bit-blasted wrapper (*model_fx_vxl.v*).

Example using bus-level wrapper (*model.v*) without timing:

```
model U1 ( model ports )
defparam
    U1.FlexModelId = "TMS_INST1";
```

Example using bus-level wrapper (*model.v*) with timing:

```
model U1 ( model ports )
defparam
    U1.FlexTimingMode = `FLEX_TIMING_MODE_ON,
    U1.TimingVersion = "timingversion",
    U1.DelayRange = "range",
    U1.FlexModelId= "TMS_INST1";
```

- There is no need to build a Verilog executable. You can use the one from *\$CDS_INST_DIR/tools/bin* by adding it to your path statement.

6. Invoke the NC-Verilog simulator to compile and simulate your design as shown in the following examples:

UNIX

```
% ncvverilog testbench +loadpli1=swiftpli:swift_boot \
  ./workdir/examples/verilog/model.v \
  ./workdir/examples/verilog/model_fx_vxl.v \
  +incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src \
  +incdir+workdir/src/verilog
```

NT

```
> ncvverilog testbench +loadpli1=swiftpli:swift_boot
  workdir\examples\verilog\model.v
  workdir\examples\verilog\model_fx_vxl.v
  +incdir+%LMC_HOME%\sim\pli\src
  +incdir+workdir\src\verilog
```



Note

If you are using ncelab and ncsim, use the `-loadpli1` switch instead of the `+loadpli1` switch.

For information on LMTV commands that you can use with FlexModels on NC-Verilog, refer to [“LMTV Command Reference” on page 281](#).

Static Linking with LMTV

If you cannot use the Synopsys-supplied `swiftpli` shared library, refer to the Cadence documentation for information on using the PLIWizard to build your own PLI library. Synopsys still ships the files needed to build your own PLI. These include:

- edited copy of `veriusers.c` in the `$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src` directory
- LMTV object (`lmtv.o`) in the `$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib` directory
- C-Pipe shared library (`slm_pli_dyn.ext`), in the `$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib` directory

If you build your own PLI, you will need to edit the `veriusers.c` file to pick up the LMTV header files as follows:

```
a. After #include "vxl_veriusers.h" add:
#include "ccl_lmtv_include.h"
b. After /**** add user entries here ****/ add:
#include "ccl_lmtv_include_code.h"
```

Using MemPro Models with NC-Verilog on UNIX

To use MemPro models with NC-Verilog on UNIX, follow this procedure. The instructions provided here are based on the assumption that you are already using NC-Verilog. MemPro is currently not supported on NT with NC-Verilog. These steps should be incorporated into your current process:

1. If you're already using a custom `veriusers.c`, you must add MemPro-specific data to your copy of `veriusers.c`:
 - Add extern declarations for MemPro PLI functions.
 - Add user entries to the “`veriusertfs`” table.

These code segments are clearly commented in the copy of `veriusers.c` located in `$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src`. Search for the string “cut here”, copy the segments, and paste them into your custom `veriusers.c`.

2. If MemPro is your only PLI application, you can skip this step and use the `veriusers.c` file located in `$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src`. Otherwise, edit `Makefile.nc` as follows:
 - a. Specify the path to the C compiler:

```
CC = path to your C compiler
```

- b. Specify the path to `slm_pli.o`:

```
PLI_OBJECT = $LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/slm_pli.o
```

where *platform* is `hp700` or `sun4Solaris`.

- c. Add a switch to the elaborator build section to load runtime system libraries.

HP-UX

```
$(CC) -o $(NCELAB) ... -ldld
```

Solaris

```
$(CC) -o $(NCELAB) ... -ldl
```

- d. Add a switch to the simulator build section to load runtime system libraries.

HP-UX

```
$(CC) -o $(NCSIM) ... -ldld
```

Solaris

```
$(CC) -o $(NCSIM) ... -ldl
```

- e. Comment out the `ARCH_RELOCATE_OPT` definition so that dynamic linking is disabled.

3. Build the static executables using the edited Makefile:

```
% make static
```

4. To include MemPro testbench interface commands in your design, perform Step [4a](#) or Step [4b](#). If you are not using HDL or C testbenches, skip to Step [5](#).

- a. If you are using Verilog testbench calls, add the following line to your Verilog testbench.

```
`include "mempro_pkg.v"
```

- b. If you are using the MemPro C testbench, add the following line to your C testbench code.

```
#include "mempro_c_tb.h"
```

For more information on using the MemPro testbench interfaces, refer to the “[HDL Testbench Interface](#)” and “[C Testbench Interface](#)” chapters in the *MemPro User's Manual*.

5. Invoke NC-Verilog to compile and simulate your design, as shown in the following example:

```
% ncvlog optional_switches \  
-incdir $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src verilog_source ...  
% ncelab design_name  
% ncsim optional_switches design_name
```

6. Instantiate MemPro models in your design. Define ports and generics as required. For information on generics used with MemPro models, refer to “[Instantiating MemPro Models](#)” on page [32](#). For information on message levels and message level constants, refer to “[Controlling MemPro Model Messages](#)” on page [33](#).

7. Compile your design as shown in the following example:

```
% ncvlog -work worklib -incdir $LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src design_name
```

8. Invoke NC-Verilog on your design as shown in the following example:

```
% verilog worklib.design_name:snap
```

Using Hardware Models with NC-Verilog

This section explains how to use Release 3.5a of ModelAccess for Verilog to interface hardware models with NC-Verilog. It is not necessary to edit and use the Makefile.nc to build a standalone version of the simulator to link to the hardware modeler. Note that dynamic linking is only supported on version 2.8 and above of NC-Verilog on HP-UX and Solaris, and version 3.0 on NT.

1. There is no need to build a Verilog executable. You can use the one from `$CDS_INST_DIR/tools/bin` by adding it to your path statement.
2. Set your `SHLIB_PATH` or `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` variable to point to the directories that contain the ModelAccess libraries. Solaris users also need to add the `/usr/dt/lib` and `/usr/openwin/lib` libraries.

HP-UX

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/ma_verilog/lib/pa_hp102:
$CDS_INST_DIR/tools/lib
```

Solaris

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/ma_verilog/lib/sun4.solaris:\
$CDS_INST_DIR/tools/lib:/usr/dt/lib:/usr/openwin/lib
```

For NT, add this path to the `PATH` user variable:

```
hardware_model_install_path\sms\ma_verilog\lib\pcnt
```

3. Invoke the simulator as shown in the following example:

```
% ncverilog testbench.v model.v +loadplil=mav:mav_boot
```

NC-Verilog Utilities

The following hardware model utilities are supported in NC-Verilog:

\$lm_log_test_vectors (“*instance_path*”, *on_off*, “*filename*”)

The `$lm_log_test_vectors` command enables test vector logging for a specified instance, and specifies a file name for the test vector log. For a detailed syntax description, refer to “[\\$lm_log_test_vectors Command Reference](#)” on page 96.

\$lm_loop_instance (“*instance_path*”)

The `$lm_loop_instance` command enables the loop mode for a specified model instance. For a detailed syntax description, refer to “[\\$lm_loop_instance Command Reference](#)” on page 97.

\$lm_timing_information (“*instance_path*”, “*timing_option*”)

The \$lm_timing_information command lets you override the hardware modeler’s default handling of timing information for a specified model instance. For a detailed syntax description, refer to “[\\$lm_timing_information Command Reference](#)” on page 98.

\$lm_timing_measurements (“*instance_path*”, *on_off*, “*filename*”)

The \$lm_timing_measurements command enables timing measurements for a specified model instance. It is not supported for ModelSource 3200 and 3400. For a detailed syntax description, refer to “[\\$lm_timing_measurements Command Reference](#)” on page 98.

\$lm_unknowns (“*option=value*” [, “*option=value*”, ...] [, “*device_or_pin*”])

The \$lm_unknowns command lets you override the hardware modeler’s default handling of unknown values for specified instances or pins, or for all hardware model instances in the simulation. For a detailed syntax description, refer to “[\\$lm_unknowns Command Reference](#)” on page 99.

5

Using MTI Verilog with Synopsys Models

Overview

This chapter explains how to use SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models with MTI Verilog (ModelSim/VLOG.). The procedures are organized into the following major sections:

- [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 113](#)
- [“Using SmartModels with MTI Verilog” on page 115](#)
- [“Using FlexModels with MTI Verilog” on page 116](#)
- [“Using MemPro Models with MTI Verilog” on page 119](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models with MTI Verilog” on page 120](#)

Setting Environment Variables

First, set the basic environment variables. If you are not using one of the model types, skip that step. In some cases the procedures that follow in this chapter include steps for setting additional environment variables.

1. Set the LMC_HOME variable to the location of your SmartModel, FlexModel, and MemPro model installation tree, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LMC_HOME path_to_models_installation
```

2. Make sure MTI Verilog is set up properly in your environment.

3. Set the `LM_LICENSE_FILE` or `SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE` environment variable to point to the product authorization file, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LM_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
% setenv SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

You can put license keys for multiple products (for example, SmartModels and hardware models) into the same authorization file. If you need to keep separate authorization files for different products, use a colon-separated list (UNIX) or semicolon-separated list (NT) to specify the search path in your variable setting.



Caution

Do not include `la_dmon`-based authorizations in the same file with `snpslmd`-based authorizations. If you have authorizations that use `la_dmon`, keep them in a separate license file that uses a different license server (`lmgrd`) process than the one you use for `snpslmd`-based authorizations.

4. If you are using the hardware modeler, set the `LM_DIR` and `LM_LIB` environment variables, as shown in the following examples:

```
% setenv LM_DIR hardware_model_install_path/sms/lm_dir
% setenv LM_LIB hardware_model_install_path/sms/models: \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/maps
```

If you put your models in a directory other than the default of `/sms/models`, modify the above variable setting accordingly.

5. Depending on your platform, set your load library variable to point to the platform-specific directory in `$LMC_HOME`, as shown in the following examples:

Solaris:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

Linux:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

AIX:

```
% setenv LIBPATH $LMC_HOME/lib/ibmrs.lib:$LIBPATH
```

HP-UX:

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib:$SHLIB_PATH
```

NT:

Make sure that `%LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib` is in the Path user variable.

Using SmartModels with MTI Verilog

SmartModels work with MTI Verilog using a PLI application called LMTV that is delivered in the form of a `swiftpli_mti` shared library in `$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib`. If you cannot use the `swiftpli_mti`, refer to [“Static Linking with LMTV” on page 116](#).

To use SmartModels with the prebuilt `swiftpli_mti`, follow this procedure:

1. Instantiate SmartModels in your design, defining the ports and defparams as required. For details on the required SWIFT parameters and SmartModel instantiation examples, refer to [“Using SmartModels with SWIFT Simulators” on page 18](#).
2. Compile your code as shown in the following examples:

UNIX

```
% vlog testbench model.v +incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src
```

NT

```
> vlog testbench model.v +incdir+%LMC_HOME%\sim\pli\src
```

3. Invoke the simulator as shown in the following examples:

HP-UX

```
% vsim -pli $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/swiftpli_mti.sl design
```

Solaris

```
% vsim -pli $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/swiftpli_mti.so design
```

Linux

```
% vsim -pli $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib/swiftpli_mti.so design
```

NT

```
> vsim %LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib\swiftpli_mti.dll design
```



Note

For information on LMTV commands that you can use with SmartModels on MTI Verilog, refer to [“LMTV Command Reference” on page 281](#).

Static Linking with LMTV

If you cannot use the Synopsys-supplied swiftpli shared library, refer to the MTI documentation for information on building your own PLI and locating it for the simulator. Synopsys still ships the files needed to build your own PLI. These include:

- edited copy of veriuser.c in the \$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src directory
- LMTV object (lmtv.o) in the \$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib directory

If you build your own PLI, you will need to edit the veriuser.c file to pick up the LMTV header files as follows:

```
a. After #include "vxl_veriuser.h" add:
#include "ccl_lmtv_include.h"
b. After "/*** add user entries here ***/" add:
#include "ccl_lmtv_include_code.h"
```

Using FlexModels with MTI Verilog

FlexModels work with Verilog-XL using a PLI application called LMTV that is delivered in the form of a swiftpli_mti shared library in \$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib. If you cannot use the swiftpli_mti, refer to [“Static Linking with LMTV” on page 119](#).

To use the prebuilt swiftpli_mti, follow this procedure:

1. Create a working directory and run flexm_setup to make copies of the model's interface and example files there, as shown in the following example:

```
% $LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
```

You must run flexm_setup every time you update your FlexModel installation with a new model version. [Table 17](#) lists the files that flexm_setup copies to your working directory.

Table 17: FlexModel MTI Verilog Files

File Name	Description	Location
<i>model_pkg.inc</i>	Verilog task definitions for FlexModel interface commands. This file also references the flexmodel_pkg.inc and model_user_pkg.inc files.	<i>workdir/src/verilog/</i>
<i>model_user_pkg.inc</i>	Clock frequency setup and user customizations.	<i>workdir/src/verilog/</i>
<i>model_fx_mti.v</i>	A SWIFT wrapper that you can use to instantiate the model.	<i>workdir/examples/verilog/</i>

File Name	Description	Location
<i>model.v</i>	A bus-level wrapper around the SWIFT model. This allows you to use vectored ports for the model in your testbench.	<i>workdir/examples/verilog/</i>
<i>model_tst.v</i>	A testbench that instantiates the model and shows how to use basic model commands.	<i>workdir/examples/verilog/</i>

- Update the clock frequency supplied in the *model_user_pkg.inc* file to correspond to the CLK period you want for the model. This file is located in:

```
workdir/src/verilog/model_user_pkg.inc
```

where *workdir* is your working directory.

- Add the following line to your Verilog testbench to include FlexModel testbench interface commands in your design:

```
`include "model_pkg.inc"
```

Be sure to add this within the module from which you will be issuing FlexModel commands. The *model_pkg.inc* file also includes references to *flexmodel_pkg.inc* and *model_user_pkg.inc*, so you need not add them to your testbench.

- Instantiate FlexModels in your design, defining the ports and defparams as required (refer to the example testbench supplied with the model). You use the supplied bus-level wrapper (*model.v*) in the top-level of your design to instantiate the supplied bit-blasted wrapper (*model_fx_mti.v*).

Example using bus-level wrapper (*model.v*) without timing:

```
model U1 ( model ports )
defparam
    U1.FlexModelId = "TMS_INST1";
```

Example using bus-level wrapper (*model.v*) with timing:

```
model U1 ( model ports )
defparam
    U1.FlexTimingMode = `FLEX_TIMING_MODE_ON,
    U1.TimingVersion = "timingversion",
    U1.DelayRange = "range",
    U1.FlexModelId= "TMS_INST1";
```

5. Compile your code as shown in the following examples:

UNIX

```
% vlog testbench \
  workdir/examples/verilog/model.v \
  workdir/examples/verilog/model_fx_mti.v \
  +incdir+$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src \
  +incdir+workdir/src/verilog
```

NT

```
> vlog testbench
  workdir\examples\verilog\model.v
  workdir\examples\verilog\model_fx_mti.v
  +incdir+%LMC_HOME%\sim\pli\src
  +incdir+workdir\src\verilog
```

6. Invoke the simulator as shown in the following examples:

HP-UX

```
% vsim -pli $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/swiftpli_mti.sl design
```

Solaris

```
% vsim -pli $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/swiftpli_mti.so design
```

Linux

```
% vsim -pli $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib/swiftpli_mti.so design
```

NT

```
> vsim -pli %LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib\swiftpli_mti.dll design
```

**Note**

For information on LMTV commands that you can use with FlexModels on MTI-Verilog, refer to [“LMTV Command Reference” on page 281](#).

Static Linking with LMTV

If you cannot use the Synopsys-supplied `swiftpli` shared library, refer to the MTI documentation for information on building your own PLI and locating it for the simulator. Synopsys still ships the files needed to build your own PLI. These include:

- edited copy of `veriusers.c` in the `$LMC_HOME/sim/pli/src` directory
- LMTV object (`lmtv.o`) in the `$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib` directory
- C-Pipe shared library (`slm_pli_dyn.ext`), in the `$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib` directory

If you build your own PLI, you will need to edit the `veriusers.c` file to pick up the LMTV header files as follows:

- After `#include "vxl_veriusers.h"` add:
`#include "ccl_lmtv_include.h"`
- After `/* add user entries here */` add:
`#include "ccl_lmtv_include_code.h"`

Using MemPro Models with MTI Verilog

The instructions provided here are based on the assumption that you are already using MTI Verilog (ModelSim). Incorporate these steps into your current process.

1. In `modelsim.ini`, replace the following line:

```

;Veriusers = veriusers.sl
HP-UX
Veriusers = $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/slm_pli_mti.sl
Solaris
Veriusers = $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/slm_pli_mti.so
NT
Veriusers = %LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib\slm_pli_mti.dll
Linux
Veriusers = $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib/slm_pli_mti.o

```

2. If you need to add additional PLI applications to your Verilog code other than required by Mempro, follow this procedure. In the `modelsim.ini` file, find the line that begins `Veriusers = veriusers.sl` and add the full path to your custom PLI compiled binary on the same line as the Mempro compiled binary. The paths to each of the compiled files must be separated by a space.

UNIX

```
Veriuser = $LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/slm_pli_mti.ext
<space>path_to_your_PLI<space>additional_pli_apps
```

where:

platform is “hp700” on HP-UX and “sun4Solaris” on SUN4Solaris

ext is “sl” on HP-UX, and “so” on SUN4Solaris.

Using Hardware Models with MTI Verilog

To use hardware models with MTI Verilog, follow this procedure. This procedure covers users on UNIX and NT. If you are on NT, substitute the appropriate NT syntax for any UNIX command line examples (percent signs around variables and backslashes in paths). Note that hardware models are supported on MTI Verilog v5.4c and up.

1. MTI Verilog only supports dynamic linking of PLI libraries. There are three ways to specify the required ModelAccess shared library. The simulator looks for PLI libraries in the order listed below:

- a. Add the platform-specific shared library to the Veriuser entry in the modelsim.ini file:

Solaris

```
Veriuser = mav.so
```

AIX

```
Veriuser = mav.so
```

HP-UX

```
Veriuser = mav.sl
```

NT

```
Veriuser = mav_mti.dll
```

- b. Add an item in the PLIOBJS environment variable list:

```
% setenv PLIOBJS "mav.ext"
```

- c. Use the -pli switch on the simulator invocation line:

```
% vsim -pli mav.ext
```



Note

For steps b and c, fill in the correct extension for your platform.

2. Regardless of the option you choose, you must locate the ModelAccess PLI library for the simulator using a platform-specific environment variable or by specifying the full path to the library in Step 1. Here are examples for setting the environment variables which show the full paths to the libraries:

Solaris

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/ma_verilog/lib/sun4_5.6/mav.so
```

HP-UX

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/ma_verilog/lib/pa_hp102/mav.sl
```

AIX

```
% setenv LIBPATH \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/ma_verilog/lib/rs6000_4.1.5/mav.so
```

For NT, add this path to the PATH user variable:

```
hardware_model_install_path\sms\ma_verilog\lib\pcnt
```

3. Generate a Verilog module definition or shell for each hardware model that you want to use by running the Synopsys-provided `lmvsg` script, as shown in the following example:

```
% lmvsg destination_model.MDL
```

For this to work, the `hardware_model_install_path/sms//ma_verilog/bin/platform` directory must be in your PATH. For details on the complete syntax of the `lmvsg` command, refer to [“lmvsg Command Reference” on page 101](#).

4. Use the Verilog module definitions to instantiate the hardware models in your testbench. The following example shows an example instantiation for the TILS299 hardware model. Notice the two “defparam” statements; the definitions of the TimingVersion (TILS299A.MDL) and DelayRange (MIN) parameters in the instantiation override the default definitions in the model.v file (TILS299.MDL and MAX, respectively). In this example, TILS299A.MDL represents a custom timing version that the designer wants to use instead of the default timing version TILS299.MDL.

```
/ Instantiate UUT : ModelSource TILS299 hardware model : U1
defparam U1.TimingVersion="TILS299A.MDL";
defparam U1.DelayRange = "MIN";
TILS299 U1(.CLK (clkw),
           .CLR (clrw),
           .A (iolw[0]),
           .B (iolw[1]),
           .C (iolw[2]),
           .D (iolw[3]),
```

```
.E (io1w[4]),
.F (io1w[5]),
.G (io1w[6]),
.H (io1w[7]),
.G1 (g1w),
.G2 (g2w),
.QA (qa1w),
.QH (qh1w),
.S0 (s0w),
.S1 (s1w),
.SL (slw),
.SR (srw));
```

5. Invoke the MTI Verilog simulator as shown in the following example, which illustrates the use of the `-pli` switch to specify the PLI library.

```
% vsim -pli mav_library
```

MTI Verilog Utilities

The following hardware model utilities are supported in MTI Verilog:

\$lm_log_test_vectors (“*instance_path*”, *on_off*, “*filename*”)

The `$lm_log_test_vectors` command enables test vector logging for a specified instance, and specifies a file name for the test vector log. For a detailed syntax description, refer to “[\\$lm_log_test_vectors Command Reference](#)” on page 96.

\$lm_loop_instance (“*instance_path*”)

The `$lm_loop_instance` command enables the loop mode for a specified model instance. For a detailed syntax description, refer to “[\\$lm_loop_instance Command Reference](#)” on page 97.

\$lm_timing_information (“*instance_path*”, “*timing_option*”)

The `$lm_timing_information` command lets you override the hardware modeler’s default handling of timing information for a specified model instance. For a detailed syntax description, refer to “[\\$lm_timing_information Command Reference](#)” on page 98.

\$lm_timing_measurements (“*instance_path*”, *on_off*, “*filename*”)

The `$lm_timing_measurements` command enables timing measurements for a specified model instance. It is not supported for ModelSource 3200 and 3400. For a detailed syntax description, refer to “[\\$lm_timing_measurements Command Reference](#)” on page 98.

\$lm_unknowns (“*option=value*” [, “*option=value*”, ...] [, “*device_or_pin*”])

The `$lm_unknowns` command lets you override the hardware modeler's default handling of unknown values for specified instances or pins, or for all hardware model instances in the simulation. For a detailed syntax description, refer to "[\\$lm_unknowns Command Reference](#)" on page 99.

6

Using Scirocco with Synopsys Models

Overview

This chapter explains how to use SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models with Scirocco. The procedures are organized into the following major sections:

- [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 126](#)
- [“Using SmartModels with Scirocco” on page 127](#)
- [“Using FlexModels with Scirocco” on page 129](#)
- [“Using MemPro Models with Scirocco” on page 134](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models with Scirocco” on page 137](#)



Hint

This chapter includes a script that you can use to run any FlexModel examples testbench with minimal setup required. You can cut-and-paste the script right out of this PDF file. Refer to [“Script for Running FlexModel Examples in Scirocco” on page 132](#) for details.

Setting Environment Variables

First, set the basic environment variables. If you are not using one of the model types, skip that step. In some cases the procedures that follow in this chapter include steps for setting additional environment variables.

1. Set the LMC_HOME variable to the location of your SmartModel, FlexModel, and MemPro model installation tree, as follows:

```
% setenv LMC_HOME path_to_models_installation
```

2. Set the SYNOPSIS_SIM variable to point to the Scirocco installation directory as follows:

```
% setenv SYNOPSIS_SIM Scirocco_installation_directory
```

3. Source the environ.csh Scirocco environment file.

```
% source $SYNOPSIS_SIM/admin/install/setup/envIRON.csh
```

4. Set the LM_LICENSE_FILE or SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE environment variable to point to the product authorization file, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LM_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

```
% setenv SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

You can put license keys for multiple products (for example, SmartModels and hardware models) into the same authorization file. If you need to keep separate authorization files for different products, use a colon-separated list (UNIX) or semicolon-separated list (NT) to specify the search path in your variable setting.



Caution

Do not include la_dmon-based authorizations in the same file with snpslmd-based authorizations. If you have authorizations that use la_dmon, keep them in a separate license file that uses a different license server (lmgrd) process than the one you use for snpslmd-based authorizations.

5. If you are using the hardware modeler, set the LM_DIR and LM_LIB environment variables, as shown in the following examples:

```
% setenv LM_DIR hardware_model_install_path/sms/lm_dir
```

```
% setenv LM_LIB hardware_model_install_path/sms/models: \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/maps
```

If you put your models in a directory other than the default of /sms/models, modify the above variable setting accordingly.

6. Depending on your platform, set your load library variable to point to the platform-specific directory in \$LMC_HOME, as shown in the following examples:

Solaris:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

Linux:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

AIX:

```
% setenv LIBPATH $LMC_HOME/lib/ibmrs.lib:$LIBPATH
```

HP-UX:

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib:$SHLIB_PATH
```

NT:

Make sure that %LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib is in the Path user variable.

Using SmartModels with Scirocco

To use SmartModels with Scirocco, follow this procedure:

1. To create SmartModel VHDL templates, check to see if you have write permission for \$LMC_HOME/synopsys/smartmodel; if so skip to Step 4. Otherwise, open the .synopsys_vss.setup file in your current working directory and search for the string SMARTMODEL. By default, the logical library name SMARTMODEL is mapped to \$LMC_HOME/synopsys/smartmodel, as follows:

```
SMARTMODEL : $LMC_HOME/synopsys/smartmodel
```

2. Change the directory to one for which you have write permission, as shown in the following example:

```
SMARTMODEL : ~/smartmodel
```

3. Generate a VHDL model wrapper file by invoking create_smartmodel_lib with any optional arguments. For information on the syntax for this command, refer to [“create_smartmodel_lib Command Reference” on page 128](#).

```
% $SYNOPSYS_SIM/sim/bin/create_smartmodel_lib arguments
```

4. If you changed the SMARTMODEL mapping in Step 2, you must use the -srcdir option to specify that directory. Also, you can save time by using the -model or -modelfile option to specify the models you want. Otherwise, the script processes all installed SmartModels. For example, here is a recommended set of options to use for one SmartModel (ttl00 in this example).:

```
% $SYNOPSYS_SIM/sim/bin/create_smartmodel_lib -model ttl00 \
-srcdir ~/smartmodel
```

5. After `create_smartmodel_lib` has finished executing, verify that the VHDL template files have been created in the appropriate directory.
6. To use SmartModels in the VHDL source file of your design, specify the SMARTMODEL library and instantiate each SmartModel component. In the VHDL design file that uses SmartModel components, enter the following library and use clauses:

```
library SMARTMODEL;
use SMARTMODEL.components.all
```

The library logical name SMARTMODEL must be mapped to appropriate directories in your `.synopsys_vss.setup` file, as described on [page 127](#).

7. Instantiate SmartModels in your VHDL design. For information on required configuration parameters and instantiation examples, refer to [“Using SmartModels with SWIFT Simulators” on page 18](#).

8. Compile your testbench as shown in the following example:

```
% vhdlan testbench
```

9. Invoke the Scirocco simulator as shown in the following example:

```
% scsim design
```

For information about `scsim` and the VHDL debugger, refer to the *Scirocco User's Guide*.

create_smartmodel_lib Command Reference

The command reference for `create_smartmodel_lib` is as follows:

Syntax

```
create_smartmodel_lib [--] [-nc] [-create] [-srcdir dirpath] [-analyze] [-nowarn]
  [-modelfile file] {-model model_name}
```

Arguments

--	Displays the usage message and lists the command line options.
-nc	Suppresses the Synopsys copyright message.
-create	Creates the VHDL source files (.vhd files) for the SMARTMODEL library and saves the source files in the \$LMC_HOME/synopsys directory.

-src_dir <i>dirpath</i>	Lets you specify the location of the VHDL source files that you create. The default location is \$LMC_HOME/synopsys.
-analyze	Analyzes the SMARTMODEL library source files (.vhd files) by invoking vhdlan. The analyzed files (.sim and .mra files) are saved in the \$LMC_HOME/synopsys/smartmodel directory. This directory is specified by SMARTMODEL logical name mapping in the setup file.
-nowarn	Suppresses the generation of warning messages that notify you of any port name mappings.
-modelfile <i>file</i>	A list of SMARTMODEL component names is read from <i>file</i> . Names are separated by spaces. Only the specified component names are included in the SMARTMODEL component library.
-model <i>model_name</i>	The <i>model_name</i> is included in the resulting SMARTMODEL component library. Repeat this option to specify multiple models. Only specified component names are included in the SMARTMODEL component library.

Description

When issued without options, the `create_smartmodel_lib` command takes all of the files in the \$LMC_HOME/models directory, creates and analyzes the VHDL template files, and saves them in the \$LMC_HOME/synopsys/smartmodel directory. If you do not have write permission for \$LMC_HOME/synopsys/smartmodel, the command terminates with an error message. In that case, you must use the `-src_dir` option to specify a writable directory in which to place the VHDL templates. You must also specify that directory through the SMARTMODEL library mapping in the `.synopsys_vss.setup` file in your current working directory.

Using FlexModels with Scirocco

To use FlexModels with Scirocco, follow this procedure:

1. If you want the improved performance that comes with bused wrappers, generate a VHDL model wrapper file by invoking `create_smartmodel_lib` with any optional arguments. For more information on the syntax for this command, refer to [“create_smartmodel_lib Command Reference” on page 128](#).

```
% $SYNOPSYS_SIM/sim/bin/create_smartmodel_lib arguments
```

**Note**

The bused wrappers enable improved performance but do not work with the examples testbench shipped with the model. To exercise the examples testbench, use the wrappers shipped with the model (see [Table 18](#)), as explained in the rest of this procedure. If you are using the bused wrappers, adjust accordingly.

2. Create a working directory and run `flexm_setup` to make copies of the model's interface and example files there, as shown in the following example:

```
% $SLMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
```

You must run `flexm_setup` every time you update your FlexModel installation with a new model version. [Table 18](#) describes the FlexModel Scirocco interface and example files that the `flexm_setup` tool copies.

Table 18: FlexModel Scirocco VHDL Files

File Name	Description	Location
<i>model_pkg.vhd</i>	Model command procedure calls for HDL Command Mode.	<i>workdir/src/vhdl/</i>
<i>model_user_pkg.vhd</i>	Clock frequency setup and user customizations.	<i>workdir/src/vhdl/</i>
<i>model_fx_vss.vhd</i>	A SWIFT wrapper for the model.	<i>workdir/examples/vhdl/</i>
<i>model_fx_comp.vhd</i>	Component definition for use with the <i>model</i> entity defined in the SWIFT wrapper file. This is put in a package named “COMPONENTS” when compiled.	<i>workdir/examples/vhdl/</i>
<i>model.vhd</i>	A bus-level wrapper around the SWIFT model. This allows you to use vectored ports for the model in your testbench. This file assumes that the “COMPONENTS” package has been installed in the logical library “slm_lib”.	<i>workdir/examples/vhdl/</i>
<i>model_tst.vhd</i>	A testbench that instantiates the model and shows how to use basic model commands.	<i>workdir/examples/vhdl/</i>

3. Update the clock frequency supplied in the *model_user_pkg.vhd* file in your working directory to correspond to the desired clock period for the model. After you run `flexm_setup` this file is located in:

```
workdir/src/vhdl/model_user_pkg.vhd
```

where *workdir* is your working directory.

4. Add the following line to your `.synopsys_vss.setup` file:

```
SLM_LIB      :    SLM_LIB_PATH
```

5. Compile the FlexModel VHDL files into logical library `slm_lib` as follows:

```
% vhdlan -noevent -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/vhpi/src/slm_hdlc.vhd
% vhdlan -event -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/vhpi/src/flexmodel_pkg.vhd
% vhdlan -event -w slm_lib workdir/src/vhdl/model_user_pkg.vhd
% vhdlan -event -w slm_lib workdir/src/vhdl/model_pkg.vhd
% vhdlan -event -w slm_lib workdir/src/vhdl/model_fx_comp.vhd
% vhdlan -event -w slm_lib workdir/src/vhdl/model_fx_vss.vhd
% vhdlan -event -w slm_lib workdir/src/vhdl/model.vhd
```

6. Add `LIBRARY` and `USE` statements to your testbench:

```
library slm_lib;
use slm_lib.flexmodel_pkg.all;
use slm_lib.model_pkg.all;
use slm_lib.model_user_pkg.all;
```

For example, you would use the following statement for the `tms320c6201_fx` model:

```
use slm_lib.tms320c6201_pkg.all;
use slm_lib.tms320c6201_user_pkg.all;
```

7. Instantiate FlexModels in your design, defining the ports and generics as required (refer to the example testbench supplied with the model). You use the supplied bus-level wrapper (`model.vhd`) in the top-level of your design to instantiate the supplied bit-blasted wrapper (`model_fx_vss.vhd`).

Example using bus-level wrapper (`model.vhd`) without timing:

```
U1: model
  generic map (FlexModelID => "TMS_INST1")
  port map ( model_ports );
```

Example using bus-level wrapper (`model.vhd`) with timing:

```
U1: model
  generic map (FlexModelID      => "TMS_INST1",
              FlexTimingMode => FLEX_TIMING_MODE_ON,
              TimingVersion  => "timingversion",
              DelayRange     => "range")
  port map ( model_ports );
```

8. Compile your testbench as shown in the following example:

```
% vhdlan testbench
```

9. Invoke the Scirocco simulator as shown in the following example:

```
% scsim -vhpi slm_vhpi:foreignINITelab:cpipe design
```

Script for Running FlexModel Examples in Scirocco

On [page 133](#) is a Perl script ([Figure 6](#)) that you can use to run Scirocco on a FlexModel examples testbench. You can use this script on any installed FlexModel because each one comes with a prebuilt testbench example that shows how to use the model commands and all the VHDL wrapper and procedure definition files that you need. This script runs on HP-UX and Solaris.

To invoke Scirocco on a FlexModel and its example testbench, follow these steps:

1. Make a working directory and set the TMPDIR variable to that location as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv TMPDIR path_to_workdir
```

2. Use the Acrobat Reader's text selection tool to select the script shown in [Figure 6](#) and copy the contents to a local file named `run_flex_examples_in_scirocco.pl`.
3. Save the file and change the permissions so that the file is executable (`chmod 775` in UNIX).
4. Invoke the script as shown in the following example:

```
% run_flex_examples_in_scirocco.pl model_fx
```

where *model_fx* is the name of the FlexModel you want to run.



Note This script was developed for internal use and is made available for customer convenience. It is not actively maintained as part of the licensed software.

```
#!/usr/local/bin/perl
# $Revision: 1.4 $
die "\nERROR running $0: ", "No FlexModel name given\n\n", unless( $ARGV[0] );
$tmpDir = $ENV{ TMPDIR };die "ERROR running $0: ", "The TMPDIR environment variable must be set.\n"
unless( $tmpDir );
$LmcHome = $ENV{ LMC_HOME };
die "ERROR running $0: ", "The LMC_HOME environment variable must be set.\n" unless( $LmcHome );
$SynopsysHome = $ENV{ SYNOPSYS_SIM };
die "ERROR running $0: ", "The SYNOPSYS_SIM environment variable must be set.\n" unless( $SynopsysHome );
require "$LmcHome/lib/bin/libmdl01003.pl";$Platform = GetPlatform();
$Platform_lib = PlatformToLibDir($Platform);
$flexmodel_name = $ARGV[0];$DirSep = "/";
$output_file = $tmpDir . $DirSep . "Example_Simulator_Run_Script_" . $flexmodel_name . ".txt";
$model_path = $LmcHome . "/models/" . $flexmodel_name;
if ( -e $model_path ) { }
else { die "\nERROR running $0: ", "FlexModel $flexmodel_name Does not Exist in Library\n\n"; }
$version_path = ` $LmcHome/bin/flexm_setup $flexmodel_name `;
chomp($version_path);
if ( $flexmodel_name =~ /_fx/ ) { $flexmodel_name =~ s/_fx/_g; $flex_or_c = "_fx";}elsif ( $flexmodel_name =~ /_fz/ ) { $flexmodel_name =~ s/_fz/_g; $flex_or_c = "_fz";}else {
die "\nERROR running $0: ", "$flexmodel_name is not a FlexModel. Model must have an _fx or _fz to be a FlexModel\n\n";}
$setup_file = $tmpDir . $DirSep . ".synopsys_vss.setup";
open(OFILE,"> $setup_file") || die " Could not create file : $setup_file\n";
print OFILE ("-- Example Scirocco library setup file\n");
print OFILE ("work > DEFAULT\n");print OFILE ("DEFAULT : work\n");print OFILE ("SLM_LIB : slm_lib\n");print OFILE ("TIMEBASE = PS\n");print OFILE ("\n");close(OFILE);
$work_dir = $tmpDir . $DirSep . "work";$slm_lib_dir = $tmpDir . $DirSep . "slm_lib";
mkdir($work_dir, 0777);mkdir($slm_lib_dir, 0777);
if ( $Platform eq "pcnt" ) { $source_setup_file = "cmd /c " . $SynopsysHome . "/admin/setup/environ.bat" } else {
$source_setup_file = "source " . $SynopsysHome . "/admin/setup/environ.csh" }
$analyze_slm_hdlc = "vhdlan -noevent -w slm_lib " . $LmcHome . "/sim/vhpi/src/slm_hdlc.vhd";
$analyze_flexmodel_pkg = "vhdlan -event -w slm_lib " . $LmcHome . "/sim/vss/src/flexmodel_pkg.vhd";
$analyze_model_user_pkg = "vhdlan -event -w slm_lib " . $version_path . "/src/vhdl/" . $flexmodel_name . "_user_pkg.vhd";
$analyze_model_pkg = "vhdlan -event -w slm_lib " . $version_path . "/src/vhdl/" . $flexmodel_name . "_pkg.vhd";
$analyze_model_prim = "vhdlan -event -w slm_lib " . $version_path . "/examples/vhdl/" . $flexmodel_name . "_vss.vhd";
$analyze_model_comp = "vhdlan -event -w slm_lib " . $version_path . "/examples/vhdl/" . $flexmodel_name . "_comp.vhd";
$analyze_model = "vhdlan -event -w slm_lib " . $version_path . "/examples/vhdl/" . $flexmodel_name . ".vhd";
$analyze_model_tst = "vhdlan -event " . $version_path . "/examples/vhdl/" . $flexmodel_name . "_tst.vhd";
if ( $Platform eq "pcnt" ) { $run_file = $tmpDir . $DirSep . "run_scirocco_" . $flexmodel_name . ".cmd";}else {
$run_file = $tmpDir . $DirSep . "run_scirocco_" . $flexmodel_name;}
open(OFILE,"> $run_file") || die " Could not create file : $run_file\n";
if ( $Platform eq "pcnt" ) { } else { print OFILE ("#!/bin/csh -f\n");}
print OFILE ("$source_setup_file\n");print OFILE ("$analyze_slm_hdlc\n");print OFILE ("$analyze_flexmodel_pkg\n");print OFILE ("$analyze_model_user_pkg\n");print OFILE ("$analyze_model_pkg\n");print OFILE ("$analyze_model_prim\n");print OFILE ("$analyze_model_comp\n");print OFILE ("$analyze_model\n");print OFILE ("$analyze_model_tst\n");
$virsim_command = "virsim +simtype+Scirocco +simargs+\` -vhpi slm_vhpi:foreignINITelab:cpipe cfgtest\`"
";print OFILE ("$virsim_command\n");
close(OFILE);if ( $Platform eq "pcnt" ) { } else { chmod(0777, $run_file);}
if ( $Platform eq "pcnt" ) { # $run_it = "wstart /d $tmpDir "; # Means nothing until Scirocco is on PCNT $run_it = " "; $run_it = $run_it . $run_file;}
else { $run_it = "cd " . $tmpDir . " "; $run_it = $run_it . $run_file;}
print("\n $run_it \n");system($run_it);
```

Figure 6: run_flex_examples_in_scirocco.pl Script

Example Simulator Run Script

The `run_flex_examples_in_scirocco.pl` script also creates an example C Shell simulator run script for the specified model in your `$TMPDIR` directory. You can use this run script to invoke Scirocco after running the `run_flex_examples_in_scirocco.pl` script. Here is what the script looks like for the `mpc860_fx` model.

```
#!/bin/csh -f
source /d/edavs/snps-2000.02PROD/admin/setup/environ.csh
vhdlan -noevent -w slm_lib /d/lmgqa2/dalew/flex/lmc_home/sim/vhpi/src/slm_hdlc.vhd
vhdlan -event -w slm_lib /d/lmgqa2/dalew/flex/lmc_home/sim/vss/src/flexmodel_pkg.vhd
vhdlan -event -w slm_lib
/d/lmgqa2/dalew/flex/lmc_home/models/mpc860_fx/mpc860_fx02012/src/vhdl/mpc860_user_pkg.v
hd
vhdlan -event -w slm_lib
/d/lmgqa2/dalew/flex/lmc_home/models/mpc860_fx/mpc860_fx02012/src/vhdl/mpc860_pkg.vhd
vhdlan -event -w slm_lib
/d/lmgqa2/dalew/flex/lmc_home/models/mpc860_fx/mpc860_fx02012/examples/vhdl/mpc860_fx_vs
s.vhd
vhdlan -event -w slm_lib
/d/lmgqa2/dalew/flex/lmc_home/models/mpc860_fx/mpc860_fx02012/examples/vhdl/mpc860_fx_co
mp.vhd
vhdlan -event -w slm_lib
/d/lmgqa2/dalew/flex/lmc_home/models/mpc860_fx/mpc860_fx02012/examples/vhdl/mpc860.vhd
vhdlan -event
/d/lmgqa2/dalew/flex/lmc_home/models/mpc860_fx/mpc860_fx02012/examples/vhdl/mpc860_tst.v
hd
virsim +simtype+Scirocco +simargs+" -vhpi slm_vhpi:foreignINITelab:cpipe cfgtest"
```

Using MemPro Models with Scirocco

You must have MemPro version 2000.04 or higher to use MemPro models with Scirocco. To use Scirocco with MemPro models, follow this procedure.

1. Add the Scirocco library path to your library path environment variable.

HP-UX:

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH \
  $SYNOPSISYS_SIM/hpux10/sim/lib:$SHLIB_PATH
```

Solaris:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH \
  $SYNOPSISYS_SIM/sparcOS5/sim/lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

2. Add the Scirocco executable to your search path:

```
% set path = ($SYNOPSISYS_SIM/platform/sim/bin $path)
```

where *platform* is `hpux10` or `sparcOS5`.

3. Create a logical library named `slm_lib`. The default physical library mapping for this is `$LMC_HOME/sim/vhpi/lib`. If you do not wish to install the library in the `LMC_HOME` tree, you can create it in any other location.
4. Add the following line to your `.synopsys_vss.setup` file:

```
SLM_LIB    :    $LMC_HOME/sim/vhpi/lib
```

5. Compile the MemPro VHDL files into logical library `slm_lib`. Note that `rdramd_pkg.vhd` is not required unless you are simulating RDRAM MemPro models.

```
% vhdlan -noevent -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/vhpi/src/slm_hdlc.vhd
% vhdlan -event -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/vhpi/src/mempro_pkg.vhd
% vhdlan -event -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/vhpi/src/rdramd_pkg.vhd
```

6. After generating a model using MemPro, compile the VHDL code for the model, as shown in the following example:

```
% vhdlan mymem.vhd
```

7. If you compiled the model to a library (`SLM_MODELS` in these examples), add a `LIBRARY` statement to your testbench:

```
LIBRARY SLM_MODELS
```

This makes models in `SLM_MODELS` accessible from your design. You can refer to the model using a standard VHDL convention, such as a `CONFIGURATION` statement:

```
CONFIGURATION mymem_a OF mymem_tst IS
  FOR atest
    FOR ALL : mymem use CONFIGURATION SLM_MODELS.mymem_behav;
  END FOR;
END FOR;
END mymem_a;
```

8. Add `LIBRARY` and `USE` statements to your testbench:

```
LIBRARY SLM_LIB
USE SLM_LIB.mempro_pkg.all
```

This also provides access to MemPro testbench commands.

For more information on using the MemPro testbench interfaces, refer to the “[HDL Testbench Interface](#)” and “[C Testbench Interface](#)” chapters in the *MemPro User’s Manual*.

9. Instantiate MemPro models in your design. Define ports and generics as required. For information on generics used with MemPro models, refer to “[Instantiating MemPro Models](#)” on page 32. For information on message levels and message level constants, refer to “[Controlling MemPro Model Messages](#)” on page 33.

10. Compile your design as shown in the following example

```
% vhdlan design_name
```

11. Invoke Scirocco on your design, making sure to include all libraries, as shown in the following example:

```
% scsim -debug_all -vhpi slm_vhpi:foreignINITelab:cpipe design_name
```



Note

The `-debug_all` switch is only needed on Scirocco release 2000.02.

Using MemPro Models in a Testbench

To use a MemPro model in a testbench, follow this procedure. If you already created `scsim` when using a MemPro model or FlexModel, skip to Step 4.

1. Create a MemPro VHDL model using MemSpec. Generate code for Cyclone or VSS.
2. Instantiate the MemPro component in your testbench.
3. Set your UNIX search path so that it points to the new `vhdsim` executable you just created.
4. Run the following commands to compile the required MemPro VHDL packages:

```
% mkdir slm_lib MY_WORK
% vhdlan -noevent -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/vhpi/src/slm_hdlc.vhd
% vhdlan -event -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/vhpi/src/mempro_pkg.vhd
```

5. Compile the model and testbench that you just created:

```
% vhdlan -event -w MY_WORK upd4516161.vhd
% vhdlan -event -w MY_WORK upd_testbench.vhd
```

6. Run the simulation:

```
% ./scsim -vhpi slm_vhpi:ForeignINITelab:cpipe your_testbench
```

Using Hardware Models with Scirocco

To use Scirocco with hardware models, follow this procedure. Note that your design can include a mix of event-based and cycle-based, but hardware models simulate only as event-based.

1. Make sure Scirocco is set up properly and all required environment variables are set, as explained in [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 126](#).
2. Add the hardware model install tree to your path variable, as shown in the following example:

```
% set path=(/install/sms/bin/your_platform/ $path)
```

3. Create the *model.vhd* wrapper file for your hardware model. You can use the *nawk* script provided in [“Scirocco Template Generator Script for Hardware Models” on page 140](#) to generate this file. Copy the script and paste it into an executable file called *hwm2vhdl.nawk*.
4. If you generate the wrapper by hand, you must provide:
 - an entity-architecture pair declaration so Scirocco can reference it in a later component instantiation statement.
 - a package for defining constants, declaring components, and instantiating components.

Scirocco Example with TILS299 Hardware Model

The following example uses the TILS299 hardware model to show how to set up hardware models for use with Scirocco:

1. After creating the wrapper *.vhd* file, analyze the file using *vhdlan*, as shown in the following example:

```
% vhdlan -event TILS299.vhd
```

2. Place the hardware model in the testbench file and invoke the simulator, as follows:

```
% scsim -t ns TB_TILS299
```

The *ns* argument invokes the simulator with nanosecond time steps.



Attention

When using hardware models with Scirocco, your design can include a mix of event-based and cycle-based, but hardware models simulate only as event-based.

Scirocco Utilities

The following hardware modeler simulator commands are supported in Scirocco.

#lmsi list devices | ids

You can use the `lmsi list devices` command to list all hardware model instances by device name, and the `lmsi list ids` command to list all hardware model instances by id name. For example:

```
# lmsi list devices
device name          id#   instance name      logging
TILS299              0     /TB_TILS299/U0    Off
# lmsi list ids
id#   device name          instance name      logging
0     TILS299              /TB_TILS299/U0    Off
```

You can also log test vectors for the hardware model. To log by ID number, specify an *id#* and a *filename*. The extension `.TST` is appended to the vector file name. If no file name is specified, VSS writes to a file named *device_name.id#.TST*. For example:

#lmsi logon *id# filename*

To log vectors by instance name, specify an *instance_name* and *filename*. The extension `.TST` is appended to the output file name. For example:

#lmsi logon *instance_name filename*

To log vectors for all hardware model device instances, specify **all**. A log file is created for each instance. The output files are named *device_name.id#.TST*. For example:

#lmsi logon all

To turn off vector logging, replace `logon` with `logoff` and omit the file name in the above examples.

VHDL Model Generics with Scirocco

You can also control hardware model behavior using VHDL generics in your hardware model instantiations. The `nawk` script on [page 140](#) creates VHDL wrappers for hardware models with these VHDL generics set to values that are reasonable for most simulations. However, you can modify the values of the VHDL generics in your *model.vhd* files to suit your verification needs. For more information on supported VHDL generics, refer to the Synopsys *VHDL Simulation Interfaces Manual*. Following are descriptions of some of the most useful generics:

LMSI_TIMING_MEASUREMENT

You can use the `LMSI_TIMING_MEASUREMENT` generic to direct where timing values for your simulation session come from. There are two legal values:

ENABLED	The hardware modeler measures and records actual pin-to-pin timing values and passes them to the simulator.
DISABLED	The hardware modelers passes to the simulator the pin-to-pin timing values from the .TMG file. This is the default value.

LMSI_DELAY_TYPE

You can use the LMSI_DELAY_TYPE generic to specify whether the hardware modeler returns pin values to the simulator with minimum, typical, or maximum delays, as you can see in the following legal values:

MINIMUM	Return minimum delays for pin values to the simulator.
TYPICAL	Return typical delays for pin values to the simulator. This is the default.
MAXIMUM	Return maximum delays for pin values to the simulator.

LMSI_LOG

You can use the LMSI_LOG generic to specify whether the hardware modeler logs test vector or not. There are two legal values:

ENABLED	The hardware modeler logs test vectors.
DISABLED	The hardware modelers does not log test vectors. This is the default value.

Scirocco Template Generator Script for Hardware Models

Here is the `nawk` script that you can use to generate VHDL wrappers for the hardware models. Because of the length this script, you will have to cut-and-paste one page at a time from this PDF file to get the whole thing copied to your environment.

```
*****
# In your design directory type:
#
# nawk -f hwm2vhdl.nawk $HWM/<model>.NAM > <outfile>.vhd
#
# (where "$HWM" is the full path to your hardware modeling directory)
# Instantiate .vhd into your design.
#
# THE SCRIPT:
#
# Script to generate a VSS/Scirocco VHDL shell for a hardware model
# using the <model>.NAM file

BEGIN {
    pin_type = 0
    is_it_a_vector = "No"
    data_type = ""
    prev_signal = ""
    prev_test = ""
    prev_number = ""
    prev_dir = ""
    ending = ";"

    printf "library SYNOPSIS;\n"
    printf "    use SYNOPSIS.ATTRIBUTES.all;\n"
    printf "library IEEE;\n"
    printf "    use IEEE.std_logic_1164.all;\n\n"
}

$2 ~ /generic_device_name/ {
    device = $3
    printf "entity " device " is\n"
    printf "    generic\n"
    printf "        (\n"
    printf "            timing : LMSI_TIMING_MEASUREMENT           := DISABLED;\n"
    printf "            delay_type : LMSI_DELAY_TYPE                 := TYPICAL;\n"
    printf "            delay : LMSI_DELAY                           := ENABLED;\n"
    printf "            log : LMSI_LOG                                := DISABLED;\n"
    printf "            timing_violations : LMSI_TIMING_VIOLATIONS   := DISABLED;\n"
    printf "            xprop : LMSI_XPROP                            := DISABLED;\n"
    printf "            xprop_method : LMSI_XPROP_METHOD              := HIGH\n"
    printf "        );\n\n"
    printf "    port\n"
    printf "        (\n"
}

$4 ~ /\(in_pin\)\/ || $4 ~ /\(out_pin\)\/ || $4 ~ /\(io_pin\)\/ \
    || $4 ~ /\(power_pin\)\/ {
    pin_type++
}

$2 ~ /\=/ || ($0 ~ /^$/ && pin_type ~ /3/) {
    if (pin_type == 1) {
        direction = "in "
    }
    else if (pin_type == 2) {
        direction = "out "
    }
    else if (pin_type == 3) {
        direction = "inout"
    }
    else {
        next
    }
    current_signal = $1 " "
    gsub(/\{/, " ", current_signal)
    gsub(/\}/, " ", current_signal)

    current_test = current_signal
}
```

```

gsub(/[0-9]+ /, " ", current_test)

n = split(current_signal, array_a, "[a-zA-Z]")
current_number = array_a[n]
gsub(/ /, "", current_number)

if (prev_signal ~ /[0-9]+ /) {
  if (current_test == prev_test) {
    if (is_it_a_vector == "No") {
      data_start = prev_number
    }
    if ((current_number == prev_number - 1) || (current_number == prev_number + 1))
    {
      is_it_a_vector = "Yes"
    }
    prev_signal = current_signal
    prev_test = current_test
    prev_number = current_number
    next
  }
  else {
    if (is_it_a_vector == "Yes") {
      total = prev_number + data_start
      if (prev_number > data_start) {
        data_end = data_start
        data_start = prev_number
      }
      else {
        data_end = prev_number
      }
      data_type = "_vector (" data_start " " "downto " data_end ")"
      prev_signal = prev_test
    }
  }
}
if (prev_signal != "") {
  gsub(/ /, "", prev_signal)
  n = split(prev_signal, array_c, "[a-zA-z0-9_]")
  y = 20 - n
  if (y > 0) {
    for (i = 1; i <= 20-n; i++) {
      prev_signal = prev_signal " "
    }
  }
  if (($0 ~ /^$/) && (pin_type == 3)) {
    ending = ""
  }
  printf "      " prev_signal " : " prev_dir " std_logic" data_type ending "\n"
}
data_type = ""
is_it_a_vector = "No"
updown = ""
prev_signal = current_signal
prev_test = current_test
prev_dir = direction
prev_number = current_number
}

END {
  printf "      );\n"
  printf "end " device ";\n\n"
  printf "architecture LMSI of " device " is\n"
  printf "  attribute FOREIGN of LMSI : architecture is \"Synopsys:LMSI\";\n"
  printf "  begin\n"
  printf "end LMSI;\n\n"
}

```

7

Using VSS with Synopsys Models

Overview

This chapter explains how to use SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models with VSS. The procedures are organized into the following major sections:

- [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 143](#)
- [“Using SmartModels with VSS” on page 145](#)
- [“Using FlexModels with VSS” on page 147](#)
- [“Using MemPro Models with VSS” on page 150](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models with VSS” on page 152](#)

Setting Environment Variables

First, set the basic environment variables. If you are not using one of the model types, skip that step. In some cases the procedures that follow in this chapter include steps for setting additional environment variables.

1. Set the LMC_HOME variable to the location of your SmartModel, FlexModel, and MemPro model installation tree, as follows:

```
% setenv LMC_HOME path_to_models_installation
```

2. Set the SYNOPSIS variable to point to the VSS installation directory as follows:

```
% setenv SYNOPSIS VSS_installation_directory
```

3. Source the environ.csh VSS environment file.

For VSS version 1998.08-1 and earlier, use this path:

```
% source $SYNOPSIS/admin/install/sin/environ.csh
```

For VSS version 1999.05 and later, use this path:

```
% source $SYNOPSIS/admin/setup/environ.csh
```

4. Set the `LM_LICENSE_FILE` or `SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE` environment variable to point to the product authorization file, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LM_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

```
% setenv SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

You can put license keys for multiple products (for example, SmartModels and hardware models) into the same authorization file. If you need to keep separate authorization files for different products, use a colon-separated list (UNIX) or semicolon-separated list (NT) to specify the search path in your variable setting.



Caution

Do not include `la_dmon`-based authorizations in the same file with `snpslmd`-based authorizations. If you have authorizations that use `la_dmon`, keep them in a separate license file that uses a different license server (`lmgrd`) process than the one you use for `snpslmd`-based authorizations.

5. If you are using the hardware modeler, set the `LM_DIR` and `LM_LIB` environment variables, as shown in the following examples:

```
% setenv LM_DIR hardware_model_install_path/sms/lm_dir
% setenv LM_LIB hardware_model_install_path/sms/models: \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/maps
```

If you put your models in a directory other than the default of `/sms/models`, modify the above variable setting accordingly.

6. Depending on your platform, set your load library variable to point to the platform-specific directory in `$LMC_HOME`, as shown in the following examples:

Solaris:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

Linux:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

AIX:

```
% setenv LIBPATH $LMC_HOME/lib/ibmrs.lib:$LIBPATH
```

HP-UX:

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib:$SHLIB_PATH
```

NT:

Make sure that `%LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib` is in the Path user variable.

Using SmartModels with VSS

To use SmartModels with VSS, follow this procedure:

1. To create SmartModel VHDL templates, check to see if you have write permission for \$LMC_HOME/synopsys/smartmodel; if so skip to Step 3. Otherwise, open the .synopsys_vss.setup file in your current working directory and search for the string SMARTMODEL. By default, the logical library name SMARTMODEL is mapped to \$LMC_HOME/synopsys/smartmodel, as follows:

```
SMARTMODEL : $LMC_HOME/synopsys/smartmodel
```

2. Change the directory to one for which you have write permission, as in the following example:

```
SMARTMODEL : ~/smartmodel
```

3. To generate VHDL model wrapper files, invoke create_smartmodel_lib with any optional arguments. For information on the syntax for this command, refer to [“create_smartmodel_lib Command Reference” on page 146](#).

```
% $SYNOPSYS_SIM/sim/bin/create_smartmodel_lib arguments
```

4. If you changed the SMARTMODEL mapping in Step 3, you must use the -srcdir option to specify that directory. Also, you can save time by using the -model or -modelfile option to specify the models you want. Otherwise, the script processes all installed SmartModels. For example, here is a recommended set of options to use for one SmartModel (ttl00 in this example).:

```
% $SYNOPSYS_SIM/sim/bin/create_smartmodel_lib -model ttl00 \
-srcdir ~/smartmodel
```

5. After create_smartmodel_lib has finished executing, verify that the VHDL template files have been created in the appropriate directory.
6. To use SmartModels in the VHDL source file of your design, specify the SMARTMODEL library and instantiate each SmartModel component. In the VHDL design file that uses SmartModel components, enter the following library and use clauses:

```
library SMARTMODEL;
use SMARTMODEL.components.all
```

The library logical name SMARTMODEL must be mapped to appropriate directories in your .synopsys_vss.setup file.

7. Instantiate SmartModels in your VHDL design. For information on required configuration parameters and instantiation examples, refer to [“Using SmartModels with SWIFT Simulators” on page 18](#).

8. Compile your testbench as shown in the following example:

```
% vhdlan testbench
```

9. Invoke the VSS simulator as shown in the following example:

```
% vhdlsim design
```

For information about vhdlsim and the VHDL debugger, refer to the *VSS User's Guide*.

create_smartmodel_lib Command Reference

The command reference for create_smartmodel_lib is as follows.

Syntax

```
create_smartmodel_lib [--] [-nc] [-create] [-srcdir dirpath] [-analyze] [-nowarn]
  [-modelfile file] {-model model_name}
```

Arguments

--	Displays the usage and all the command line options of the utility.
-nc	Suppresses the Synopsys copyright message.
-create	Creates the VHDL source files (.vhd files) for the SMARTMODEL library and saves the source files in the \$LMC_HOME/synopsys directory.
-src_dir <i>dir</i>	Lets you specify the location of the VHDL source files that you create. The default location is \$LMC_HOME/synopsys.
-analyze	Analyzes the SMARTMODEL library source files (.vhd files) by invoking vhdlan. The analyzed files (.sim and .mra files) are saved in the \$LMC_HOME/synopsys/smartmodel directory. This directory is specified by the SMARTMODEL logical name mapping in the setup file.
-nowarn	Suppresses the generation of warning messages that notify you of any port name mappings. See “VHDL Reserved Port and Window Names” in the <i>VSS Expert Interface Manual</i> for more information about port name mappings.
-modelfile <i>file</i>	A list of SMARTMODEL component names is read from <i>file</i> . Names are separated by spaces. Only those component names specified are included in the SMARTMODEL component library.

`-model modelname` Each specified *modelname* is included in the resulting SMARTMODEL component library. Repeat this option to specify multiple models. Only those component names specified are included in the SMARTMODEL component library.

Description

The `create_smartmodel_lib` command, if issued without options, uses as input all of the files in the `$LMC_HOME/models` directory, creates and analyzes the template files, and saves them in the `$LMC_HOME/synopsys/smartmodel` directory. If you do not have write permission for `$LMC_HOME/synopsys/smartmodel`, the command terminates with an error message. In that case, you must use the `-src_dir` option to specify a writable directory in which to place the VHDL templates. You must also specify that directory through the SMARTMODEL library mapping in the `.synopsys_vss.setup` file in your current working directory.

Using FlexModels with VSS

To use FlexModels with VSS in UNIX, follow this procedure. There is no custom integration for VSS on NT, but you can use Direct C Control. For information on using Direct C Control, refer to [“Instantiating FlexModels with Direct C Control” on page 26](#).

1. If you want the improved performance that comes with bused wrappers, you can generate VHDL model wrapper files by invoking `create_smartmodel_lib` with any optional arguments. For more information on the syntax for this command, refer to [“create_smartmodel_lib Command Reference” on page 146](#).

```
% $SYNOPTSYS_SIM/sim/bin/create_smartmodel_lib arguments
```



Note

The bused wrappers enable improved performance but do not work with the examples testbench shipped with the model. To exercise the examples testbench, use the wrappers shipped with the model (see [Table 19](#)), as explained in the rest of this procedure. If you are using the bused wrappers, adjust accordingly.

2. Create a working directory and run `flexm_setup` to make copies of the model's interface and example files there, as shown in the following example:

```
% $LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
```

You must run `flexm_setup` every time you update your FlexModel installation with a new model version. Table 19 describes the FlexModel VSS interface and example files that the `flexm_setup` tool copies.

Table 19: FlexModel VSS VHDL Files

File Name	Description	Location
<code>model_pkg.vhd</code>	Model command procedure calls for HDL Command Mode.	<code>workdir/src/vhdl/</code>
<code>model_user_pkg.vhd</code>	Clock frequency setup and user customizations.	<code>workdir/src/vhdl/</code>
<code>model_fx_vss.vhd</code>	A SWIFT wrapper for the model.	<code>workdir/examples/vhdl/</code>
<code>model_fx_comp.vhd</code>	Component definition for use with the <code>model</code> entity defined in the SWIFT wrapper file. This is put in a package named “COMPONENTS” when compiled.	<code>workdir/examples/vhdl/</code>
<code>model.vhd</code>	A bus-level wrapper around the SWIFT model. This allows you to use vectored ports for the model in your testbench. This file assumes that the “COMPONENTS” package has been installed in the logical library “slm_lib”.	<code>workdir/examples/vhdl/</code>
<code>model_tst.vhd</code>	A testbench that instantiates the model and shows how to use basic model commands.	<code>workdir/examples/vhdl/</code>

- Update the clock frequency supplied in the `model_user_pkg.vhd` file in your working directory to correspond to the desired clock period for the model. After running `flexm_setup` this file will be located in:

```
workdir/src/vhdl/model_user_pkg.vhd
```

where `workdir` is your working directory.

- Compile a dummy module to force linking of CLI library functions, as shown in the following example:

```
% cp $LMC_HOME/sim/vss/src/vss_dummy_calls.c ./vss_dummy_calls.c
% cli -ansi -s -add -cf vss_dummy_calls.c vss_dummy_calls
```

- Link the FlexModel binary into the `vhdsim` simulation executable:

```
% cli -ansi -s -build -libs $LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/slm_vss.o
```

where `platform` is `hp700` or `sun4Solaris`.

The new version of vhdlsim you just created must be used when you simulate a design that includes FlexModels. This vhdlsim must be defined as the first vhdlsim in your UNIX search path.

6. Add the following line to your `.synopsys_vss.setup` file:

```
SLM_LIB      :   SLM_LIB_PATH
```

7. Compile the FlexModel VHDL files into logical library `slm_lib` as follows:

```
% vhdlan -c -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/vss/src/slm_hdlc.vhd
% vhdlan -c -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/vss/src/flexmodel_pkg.vhd
% vhdlan -c -w slm_lib workdir/src/vhdl/model_user_pkg.vhd
% vhdlan -c -w slm_lib workdir/src/vhdl/model_pkg.vhd
% vhdlan -c -w slm_lib workdir/src/vhdl/model_fx_comp.vhd
% vhdlan -c -w slm_lib workdir/src/vhdl/model_fx_vss.vhd
% vhdlan -c -w slm_lib workdir/src/vhdl/model.vhd
```

8. Add LIBRARY and USE statements to your testbench:

```
library slm_lib;
use slm_lib.flexmodel_pkg.all;
use slm_lib.model_pkg.all;
use slm_lib.model_user_pkg.all;
```

For example, you would use the following statement for the `tms320c6201_fx` model:

```
use slm_lib.tms320c6201_pkg.all;
use slm_lib.tms320c6201_user_pkg.all;
```

9. Instantiate FlexModels in your design, defining the ports and generics as required (refer to the example testbench supplied with the model). You use the supplied bus-level wrapper (`model.vhd`) in the top-level of your design to instantiate the supplied bit-blasted wrapper (`model_fx_vss.vhd`).

Example using bus-level wrapper (`model.vhd`) without timing:

```
U1: model
  generic map (FlexModelID => "TMS_INST1")
  port map ( model_ports );
```

Example using bus-level wrapper (`model.vhd`) with timing:

```
U1: model
  generic map (FlexModelID      => "TMS_INST1",
              FlexTimingMode => FLEX_TIMING_MODE_ON,
              TimingVersion  => "timingversion",
              DelayRange     => "range")
  port map ( model_ports );
```

10. Compile your testbench as shown in the following example:

```
% vhdlan testbench
```

11. Invoke the VSS simulator as shown in the following example:

```
% vhdlsim design
```

Using MemPro Models with VSS

To use MemPro models with VSS, follow this procedure. Note that on Solaris, VSS requires the Sunsoft compiler and Solaris 2.5 or later.

1. Compile a dummy module to force linking of CLI library functions:

```
% cli -ansi -s -add -cf \  
    $LMC_HOME/sim/vss/src/vss_dummy_calls.c vss_dummy_calls
```

2. Link the MemPro binary into the vhdlsim simulation executable:

```
% cli -ansi -s -build -libs $LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/slm_vss.o
```

where *platform* is hp700 or sun4Solaris.

The new version of vhdlsim you just created must be used when you simulate a design that includes MemPro memory models. In order to use vhdldb on a design that includes MemPro models, the vhdlsim you just created must be defined as the first vhdlsim in your UNIX search path.

3. For Solaris, set the LD_LIBRARY_DATA environment variable as follows:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_DATA $SYNOPTSYS/sparcOS5/sim/lib
```

4. Create a logical library named slm_lib. The default physical library mapping for this is \$LMC_HOME/sim/vss/lib; however, you can create slm_lib any where you want.

Add the following line to your .synopsys_vss.setup file:

```
SLM_LIB : $LMC_HOME/sim/vss/lib
```

5. Compile the MemPro VHDL files into logical library slm_lib. Note that rdramd_pkg.vhd is not required unless you are simulating RDRAM MemPro models.

```
% vhdlan -c -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/vss/src/slm_hdlc.vhd  
% vhdlan -c -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/vss/src/mempro_pkg.vhd  
% vhdlan -c -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/vss/src/rdramd_pkg.vhd
```



Note

The vhdlan program returns an “Error compiling file” warning message for rdramd_pkg.vhd and reverts to interpreted code for the file. Your designs containing MemPro RDRAMs will simulate properly, however.

6. After generating a model using MemPro, compile the VHDL code for the model, as shown in the following example:

```
% vhdlan -c mymem.vhd
```

7. If you compiled the model to a library (SLM_MODELS in these examples), add a LIBRARY statement to your testbench:

```
LIBRARY SLM_MODELS
```

This makes models in SLM_MODELS accessible from your design. You can refer to the model using a standard VHDL convention, such as a CONFIGURATION statement:

```
CONFIGURATION mymem_a OF mymem_tst IS
  FOR atest
    FOR ALL : mymem use CONFIGURATION SLM_MODELS.mymem_behav;
  END FOR;
END FOR;
END mymem_a;
```

8. Add LIBRARY and USE statements to your testbench:

```
LIBRARY SLM_LIB
USE SLM_LIB.mempro_pkg.all
```

This also provides access to MemPro testbench commands.

For more information on using the MemPro testbench interfaces, refer to the “[HDL Testbench Interface](#)” and “[C Testbench Interface](#)” chapters in the *MemPro User’s Manual*.

9. Instantiate MemPro models in your design. Define ports and generics as required. For information on generics used with MemPro models, refer to “[Instantiating MemPro Models](#)” on page 32. For information on message levels and message level constants, refer to “[Controlling MemPro Model Messages](#)” on page 33.
10. Compile your design as shown in the following example:

```
% vhdlan design_name
```

11. Invoke VSS on your design as shown in the following example:

```
% vhdlsim design_name
```

Using Hardware Models with VSS

To use hardware models with VSS, follow this procedure:

1. Make sure VSS is set up properly and all required environment variables are set, as explained in [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 143](#). Also, make sure you have the VSS-LMSI key in your license file for the interface licensing.
2. Add the hardware model install tree to your path variable, as shown in the following example:

```
% set path=(/install/sms/bin/your_platform/ $path)
```

3. Create the *model.vhd* wrapper file for your hardware model. You can use the *nawk* script provided in [“VSS Template Generator Script for Hardware Models” on page 155](#) to generate this file. Copy the script and paste it into an executable file called *hwm2vhdl.nawk*.
4. If you generate the wrapper by hand, you must provide:
 - an entity-architecture pair declaration so VSS can reference it in a later component instantiation statement.
 - a package for defining constants, declaring components, and instantiating components.

VSS Example with TILS299 Hardware Model

The following example uses the TILS299 hardware model to show how to set up hardware models for use with VSS:

1. After creating the wrapper *.vhd* file, analyze the *TILS299.vhd* using *vhdlan*, as shown in the following example:

```
% vhldan TILS299.vhd
```

2. Place the hardware model in the testbench file and invoke the simulator. For this TILS299 example, we used the Synopsys VHDL Debugger, as follows:

```
% vhdldb -t ns TB_TILS299
```

The *ns* argument invokes the simulator with nanosecond timesteps.

VSS Utilities

The following hardware modeler simulator commands are supported in VSS.

lmsi list devices | ids

You can use the `lmsi list devices` command to list all hardware model instances by device name, and the `lmsi list ids` command to list all hardware model instances by id name. For example:

```
# lmsi list devices
device name          id#   instance name      logging
TILS299              0     /TB_TILS299/U0    Off
# lmsi list ids
id#   device name          instance name      logging
0     TILS299              /TB_TILS299/U0    Off
```

You can also log test vectors for the hardware model. To log by ID number, specify an *id#* and a *filename*. The extension `.TST` is appended to the vector file name. If no file name is specified, VSS writes to a file named *device_name.id#.TST*. For example:

#lmsi logon id# filename

To log vectors by instance name, specify an *instance_name* and *filename*. The extension `.TST` is appended to the output file name. For example:

#lmsi logon instance_name filename

To log vectors for all hardware model device instances, specify **all**. A log file is created for each instance. The output files are named *device_name.id#.TST*. For example:

#lmsi logon all

To turn off vector logging, replace `logon` with `logoff` and omit the *filename* in the above examples.

VHDL Model Generics with VSS

You can also control hardware model behavior using VHDL generics in your hardware model instantiations. The `nawk` script on [page 155](#) creates VHDL wrappers for hardware models with these VHDL generics set to values that are reasonable for most simulations. However, you can modify the values of the VHDL generics in your *model.vhd* files to suit your verification needs. For more information on supported VHDL generics, refer to the Synopsys *VHDL Simulation Interfaces Manual*. Following are descriptions of some of the most useful generics:

LMSI_TIMING_MEASUREMENT

You can use the `LMSI_TIMING_MEASUREMENT` generic to direct where timing values for your simulation session come from. There are two legal values:

<code>ENABLED</code>	The hardware modeler measures and records actual pin-to-pin timing values and passes them to the simulator.
<code>DISABLED</code>	The hardware modeler passes to the simulator the pin-to-pin timing values from the <code>.TMG</code> file. This is the default value.

LMSI_DELAY_TYPE

You can use the `LMSI_DELAY_TYPE` generic to specify whether the hardware modeler returns pin values to the simulator with minimum, typical, or maximum delays, as you can see in the following legal values:

<code>MINIMUM</code>	Return minimum delays for pin values to the simulator.
<code>TYPICAL</code>	Return typical delays for pin values to the simulator. This is the default.
<code>MAXIMUM</code>	Return maximum delays for pin values to the simulator.

LMSI_LOG

You can use the `LMSI_LOG` generic to specify whether the hardware modeler logs test vector or not. There are two legal values:

<code>ENABLED</code>	The hardware modeler logs test vectors.
<code>DISABLED</code>	The hardware modelers does not log test vectors. This is the default value.

VSS Template Generator Script for Hardware Models

Here is the `nawk` script that you can use to generate VHDL wrappers for the hardware models. Because of the length this script, you will have to cut-and-paste one page at a time from this PDF file to get the whole thing copied to your environment.

```
*****
# In your design directory type:
#
# nawk -f hwm2vhdl.nawk $HWM/<model>.NAM > <outfile>.vhd
#
# (where "$HWM" is the full path to your hardware modeling directory)
# Instantiate .vhd into your design.
#
# THE SCRIPT:
#
# Script to generate a VSS/Scirocco VHDL shell for a hardware model
# using the <model>.NAM file

BEGIN {
    pin_type = 0
    is_it_a_vector = "No"
    data_type = ""
    prev_signal = ""
    prev_test = ""
    prev_number = ""
    prev_dir = ""
    ending = ";"

    printf "library SYNOPSIS;\n"
    printf "    use SYNOPSIS.ATTRIBUTES.all;\n"
    printf "library IEEE;\n"
    printf "    use IEEE.std_logic_1164.all;\n\n"

}

$2 ~ /generic_device_name/ {
    device = $3
    printf "entity " device " is\n"
    printf "    generic\n"
    printf "        (\n"
    printf "            timing : LMSI_TIMING_MEASUREMENT           := DISABLED;\n"
    printf "            delay_type : LMSI_DELAY_TYPE                 := TYPICAL;\n"
    printf "            delay : LMSI_DELAY                           := ENABLED;\n"
    printf "            log : LMSI_LOG                                := DISABLED;\n"
    printf "            timing_violations : LMSI_TIMING_VIOLATIONS   := DISABLED;\n"
    printf "            xprop : LMSI_XPROP                            := DISABLED;\n"
    printf "            xprop_method : LMSI_XPROP_METHOD              := HIGH\n"
    printf "        );\n\n"
    printf "    port\n"
    printf "        (\n"

}

$4 ~ /\(in_pin\)\/ || $4 ~ /\(out_pin\)\/ || $4 ~ /\(io_pin\)\/ \
    || $4 ~ /\(power_pin\)\/ {
    pin_type++
}

$2 ~ /\=/ || ($0 ~ /^$/ && pin_type ~ /3/) {
    if (pin_type == 1) {
        direction = "in "
    }
    else if (pin_type == 2) {
        direction = "out "
    }
    else if (pin_type == 3) {
        direction = "inout"
    }
    else {
        next
    }
    current_signal = $1 " "
    gsub(/\{/, " ", current_signal)
    gsub(/\}/, " ", current_signal)

    current_test = current_signal
}
```

```

gsub(/[0-9]+ /, " ", current_test)

n = split(current_signal, array_a, "[a-zA-Z]")
current_number = array_a[n]
gsub(/ /, "", current_number)

if (prev_signal ~ /[0-9]+ /) {
  if (current_test == prev_test) {
    if (is_it_a_vector == "No") {
      data_start = prev_number
    }
    if ((current_number == prev_number - 1) || (current_number == prev_number + 1))
    {
      is_it_a_vector = "Yes"
    }
    prev_signal = current_signal
    prev_test = current_test
    prev_number = current_number
    next
  }
  else {
    if (is_it_a_vector == "Yes") {
      total = prev_number + data_start
      if (prev_number > data_start) {
        data_end = data_start
        data_start = prev_number
      }
      else {
        data_end = prev_number
      }
      data_type = "_vector (" data_start " " "downto " data_end ")"
      prev_signal = prev_test
    }
  }
}
if (prev_signal != "") {
  gsub(/ /, "", prev_signal)
  n = split(prev_signal, array_c, "[a-zA-z0-9_]")
  y = 20 - n
  if (y > 0) {
    for (i = 1; i <= 20-n; i++) {
      prev_signal = prev_signal " "
    }
  }
  if (($0 ~ /^$/) && (pin_type == 3)) {
    ending = ""
  }
  printf "      " prev_signal " : " prev_dir " std_logic" data_type ending "\n"
}
data_type = ""
is_it_a_vector = "No"
updown = ""
prev_signal = current_signal
prev_test = current_test
prev_dir = direction
prev_number = current_number
}

END {
  printf "      ");\n"
  printf "end " device ";\n\n"
  printf "architecture LMSI of " device " is\n"
  printf "  attribute FOREIGN of LMSI : architecture is \"Synopsys:LMSI\";\n"
  printf "  begin\n"
  printf "end LMSI;\n\n"
}

```

8

Using MTI VHDL with Synopsys Models

Overview

This chapter explains how to use SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models with MTI VHDL. The procedures are organized into the following major sections:

- [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 157](#)
- [“Using SmartModels with MTI VHDL” on page 159](#)
- [“Using FlexModels with MTI VHDL” on page 162](#)
- [“Using MemPro Models with MTI VHDL” on page 165](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models with MTI VHDL” on page 167](#)

Setting Environment Variables

First, set the basic environment variables. If you are not using one of the model types, skip that step. In some cases the procedures that follow in this chapter include steps for setting additional environment variables.

1. Set the LMC_HOME variable to the location of your SmartModel, FlexModel, and MemPro model installation tree, as follows:

```
% setenv LMC_HOME path_to_models_installation
```

2. Make sure that MTI VHDL is set up properly in your environment.
3. Set the LM_LICENSE_FILE or SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE environment variable to point to the product authorization file, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LM_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

```
% setenv SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

You can put license keys for multiple products (for example, SmartModels and hardware models) into the same authorization file. If you need to keep separate authorization files for different products, use a colon-separated list (UNIX) or semicolon-separated list (NT) to specify the search path in your variable setting.



Caution

Do not include `la_dmon`-based authorizations in the same file with `snpslmd`-based authorizations. If you have authorizations that use `la_dmon`, keep them in a separate license file that uses a different license server (`lmgrd`) process than the one you use for `snpslmd`-based authorizations.

4. If you are using the hardware modeler, set the `LM_DIR` and `LM_LIB` environment variables, as shown in the following examples:

```
% setenv LM_DIR hardware_model_install_path/sms/lm_dir
% setenv LM_LIB hardware_model_install_path/sms/models: \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/maps
```

If you put your models in a directory other than the default of `/sms/models`, modify the above variable setting accordingly.

5. Depending on your platform, set your load library variable to point to the platform-specific directory in `$LMC_HOME`, as shown in the following examples:

Solaris:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

Linux:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

AIX:

```
% setenv LIBPATH $LMC_HOME/lib/ibmrs.lib:$LIBPATH
```

HP-UX:

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib:$SHLIB_PATH
```

NT:

Make sure that `%LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib` is in the `Path` user variable.

Using SmartModels with MTI VHDL

To use SmartModels with MTI VHDL, follow this procedure:

1. Open the modelsim.ini file in a text editor and uncomment the lines corresponding to the platform you are using:

```

; ModelSimís interface to Logic Modelingís SmartModel SWIFT software
; libsm = $MODEL_TECH/libsm.sl
; ModelSimís interface to Logic Modelingís SmartModel SWIFT software
(Windows NT)
; libsm = $MODEL_TECH/libsm.dll
; Logic Modelingís SmartModel SWIFT software (HP 9000 Series 700)
; libswift = $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/libswift.sl
; Logic Modelingís SmartModel SWIFT software (IBM RISC System/6000)
; libswift = $LMC_HOME/lib/ibmrs.lib/swift.o
; Logic Modelingís SmartModel SWIFT software (Sun4 Solaris)
; libswift = $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/libswift.so
; Logic Modelingís SmartModel SWIFT software (Sun4 SunOS)
; do setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4SunOS.lib
; and run "vsim.swift".
; Logic Modelingís SmartModel SWIFT software (Windows NT)
; libswift = $LMC_HOME/lib/pcnt.lib/libswift.dll

```

2. To create the SmartModel Library VHDL wrappers or templates, run the MTI `sm_entity` script with any optional arguments. The `sm_entity` script takes SmartModel names as input and writes the VHDL output to `STDOUT`. You can redirect the output to a file. Run `sm_entity` as follows. For more information, refer to [“sm_entity Command Reference” on page 162](#).

```
% sm_entity -c model > model.vhd
```

For example:

```
% sm_entity -c ttl373 > ttl373.vhd
```

generates the following VHDL file, which has both entity and component declarations for the model. Edit the resulting VHDL file to add the portions of text that are highlighted in the following example:

```

library IEEE;
use IEEE.std_logic_1164.all;
entity ttl373 is
generic ( TimingVersion : STRING := "SN74LS373";
DelayRange : STRING := "MAX";
ModelMapVersion : STRING := "01008" );
port ( C : in std_logic;
D1 : in std_logic;
D2 : in std_logic;
D3 : in std_logic;
D4 : in std_logic;

```

```
D5 : in std_logic;
D6 : in std_logic;
D7 : in std_logic;
D8 : in std_logic;
OC : in std_logic;
Q1 : out std_logic;
Q2 : out std_logic;
Q3 : out std_logic;
Q4 : out std_logic;
Q5 : out std_logic;
Q6 : out std_logic;
Q7 : out std_logic;
Q8 : out std_logic );
end;
```

architecture SmartModel of ttl373 is
attribute FOREIGN : STRING;
attribute FOREIGN of SmartModel : architecture is "sm_init
\$MODEL_TECH/libsm.sl ; ttl373";
begin
end SmartModel;

```
library ieee; use ieee.std_logic_1164.all; package comp is  
component ttl373  
generic ( TimingVersion : STRING := "SN74LS373";  
DelayRange : STRING := "MAX";  
ModelMapVersion : STRING := "01008" );  
port ( C : in std_logic;  
D1 : in std_logic;  
D2 : in std_logic;  
D3 : in std_logic;  
D4 : in std_logic;  
D5 : in std_logic;  
D6 : in std_logic;  
D7 : in std_logic;  
D8 : in std_logic;  
OC : in std_logic;  
Q1 : out std_logic;  
Q2 : out std_logic;  
Q3 : out std_logic;  
Q4 : out std_logic;  
Q5 : out std_logic;  
Q6 : out std_logic;  
Q7 : out std_logic;  
Q8 : out std_logic );  
end component;
```

end comp;

3. Compile the *model.vhd* into a library called *slm_lib*, as follows:

```
% vlib slm_lib
% vmap slm_lib slm_lib
% vcom -work slm_lib model.vhd
```

4. Instantiate the SmartModel component in your testbench by specifying the required SWIFT parameters in the generic map. Here is an example instantiation for the TTL373 model, with the library and use statements, the instance (U1), and the TimingVersion and DelayRange options specified in the generic map for the TTL373 SmartModel Library component.

Use the SmartModel Library (*slm_lib*) just as you would use any other VHDL resource library. Here is an example:

```
library IEEE;
use IEEE.STD_LOGIC_1164.ALL;
library SLM_LIB;
use SLM_LIB.COMPONENTS.ALL;

entity TestBench is
end TestBench;

architecture ArchTestBench of TestBench is

signal A, B, C: STD_LOGIC;

U1 : TTL373 generic map (TimingVersion => "SN74LS373",
DelayRange => "Typ")
port map (A => D1, B => D2, C => Q1);

P1 : process
begin
```

For more information on SmartModel configuration parameters, refer to [“Using SmartModels with SWIFT Simulators”](#) on page 18.

5. Compile the top-level testbench to a work library (*MYWORK*) as shown in the following example:

```
% vlib MYWORK
% vcom -work MYWORK top.vhd
```

6. Invoke the simulator by running *vsim*, as shown in the following example:

```
% vsim -lib MYWORK CFGTEST
```

For information on how to use MTI VHDL, refer to the *“ModelSim User’s Manual.”*

sm_entity Command Reference

The command reference for sm_entity is as follows.

Syntax

sm_entity [options] [SmartModels]

Arguments

-read	Read SmartModel names from standard input.
-xe	Do not generate entity declarations.
-xa	Do not generate architecture bodies.
-c	Generate component declarations.
-all	Select all models in the SmartModel Library.
-v	Display progress messages.

By default, sm_entity generates an entity and architecture. Optionally, you can include the component declaration (-c), exclude the entity (-xe), or exclude the architecture (-xa).

Using FlexModels with MTI VHDL

To use FlexModels with MTI VHDL, follow this procedure. This procedure covers users on UNIX and NT. If you are on NT, substitute the appropriate NT syntax for any UNIX command line examples (percent signs around variables and backslashes in paths).

1. Create a working directory and run flexm_setup to make copies of the model's interface and example files there, as shown in the following example:

```
% $LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
```

You must run `flexm_setup` every time you update your FlexModel installation with a new model version. Table 20 describes the FlexModel interface and example files that the `flexm_setup` tool copies.

Table 20: FlexModel MTI VHDL Files

File Name	Description	Location
<i>model_pkg.vhd</i>	Model command procedure calls for HDL Command Mode.	<i>workdir/src/vhdl/</i>
<i>model_user_pkg.vhd</i>	Clock frequency setup and user customizations.	<i>workdir/src/vhdl/</i>
<i>model_fx_mti.vhd</i>	A SWIFT wrapper for the UNIX model.	<i>workdir/examples/vhdl/</i>
<i>model_fx_mti_nt.vhd</i>	A SWIFT wrapper for the NT model.	<i>workdir/examples/vhdl/</i>
<i>model_fx_comp.vhd</i>	Component definition for use with the <i>model</i> entity defined in the above SWIFT wrapper file. This is put in a package named “COMPONENTS” when compiled.	<i>workdir/examples/vhdl/</i>
<i>model.vhd</i>	A bus-level wrapper around the SWIFT model. This allows you to use vectored ports for the model in your testbench. This file assumes that the “COMPONENTS” package has been installed in the logical library “slm_lib”.	<i>workdir/examples/vhdl/</i>
<i>model_tst.vhd</i>	A testbench that instantiates the model and shows how to use basic model commands.	<i>workdir/examples/vhdl/</i>

2. On NT, add the following to your `modelsim.ini` file:

```
libsm = $MODEL_TECH/libsm.dll
```

and add the following to your PATH:

```
%LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib
```

This is so MTI can find the `slm_mti.dll` file.

3. Update the clock frequency supplied in the *model_user_pkg.vhd* file to correspond to the desired clock period for the model. After running `flexm_setup`, this file is located in:

```
workdir/src/vhdl/model_user_pkg.vhd
```

where *workdir* is your working directory.

4. Add the following to your vsystem.ini or modelsim.ini file.

```
slm_lib=$LMC_HOME/sim/mti/lib
VHDL93 = 1
```

5. Compile the FlexModel VHDL files into logical library slm_lib as follows:

```
% mti_path/bin/vlib $LMC_HOME/sim/mti/lib
% mti_path/bin/vcom -work slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/mti/src/slm_hdlc.vhd (UNIX)
% mti_path/bin/vcom -work slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/mti/src/slm_hdlc_nt.vhd (NT)
% mti_path/bin/vcom -work slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/mti/src/flexmodel_pkg.vhd
% mti_path/bin/vcom -work slm_lib workdir/src/vhdl/model_user_pkg.vhd
% mti_path/bin/vcom -work slm_lib workdir/src/vhdl/model_pkg.vhd
% mti_path/bin/vcom -work slm_lib workdir/examples/vhdl/model_fx_comp.vhd
% mti_path/bin/vcom -work slm_lib workdir/examples/vhdl/model_fx_mti.vhd (UNIX)
% mti_path/bin/vcom -work slm_lib workdir/examples/vhdl/model_fx_mti_nt.vhd (NT)
% mti_path/bin/vcom -work slm_lib workdir/examples/vhdl/model.vhd
```

6. Add LIBRARY and USE statements to your testbench:

```
library slm_lib;
use slm_lib.flexmodel_pkg.all;
use slm_lib.model_pkg.all;
use slm_lib.model_user_pkg.all;
```

For example, you would use the following statement for the tms320c6201_fx model:

```
use slm_lib.tms320c6201_pkg.all;
use slm_lib.tms320c6201_user_pkg.all;
```

7. Instantiate FlexModels in your design, defining the ports and generics as required (refer to the example testbench supplied with the model). You use the supplied bus-level wrapper (*model.vhd*) in the top-level of your design to instantiate the supplied bit-blasted wrapper (*model_fx_mti.vhd* for UNIX or *model_fx_mti_nt.vhd* for NT).

Example using bus-level wrapper (*model.vhd*) without timing:

```
U1: model
  generic map (FlexModelID => "TMS_INST1")
  port map ( model_ports );
```

Example using bus-level wrapper (*model.vhd*) with timing:

```
U1: model
  generic map (FlexModelID      => "TMS_INST1",
              FlexTimingMode => FLEX_TIMING_MODE_ON,
              TimingVersion  => "timingversion",
              DelayRange     => "range")
  port map ( model_ports );
```

8. Compile the testbench as shown in the following example:

```
% vcom testbench
```

9. Invoke the MTI VHDL simulator as shown in the following example:

```
% vsim design
```

Using MemPro Models with MTI VHDL

To use MemPro models with MTI VHDL, follow this procedure:

1. Perform *one* of these platform-dependent steps.
 - a. On NT platforms, verify that the shared library is visible from the current working directory. The path to the shared library (%LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib) was set at MemPro installation.
 - b. On UNIX and Linux platforms, append the MemPro shared library location to the library search path environment variable setting.

On Solaris or Linux workstations:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH \  
$LMC_HOME/lib/plat.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

where *plat* is sun4Solaris or x86_linux, respectively.

On HP-UX workstations:

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH \  
$LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

2. Create a local copy of modelsim.ini in the current working directory and a local logical library named slm_lib:

```
% vlib slm_lib  
% vmap slm_lib ./slm_lib
```

3. Edit your local modelsim.ini file to enable VHDL-1993 and SWIFT by removing the comments (;) at the beginning of those lines:



Attention

Remove the comment from the SWIFT library line *only* for the platform you are using.

```
; Turn on VHDL-1993 as the default. Normally is off.  
; VHDL93 = 1
```

```
.  
.  
; ModelSim's interface to Logic Modeling's SmartModel SWIFT software  
libsm = $MODEL_TECH/libsm.sl
```

```

; ModelSim's interface to Logic Modeling's SmartModel SWIFT software
(Windows NT)
; libsm = $MODEL_TECH/libsm.dll
; Logic Modeling's SmartModel SWIFT software (HP 9000 Series 700)
; libswift = $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/libswift.sl
; Logic Modeling's SmartModel SWIFT software (IBM RISC System/6000)
; libswift = $LMC_HOME/lib/ibmrs.lib/swift.o
; Logic Modeling's SmartModel SWIFT software (Sun4 Solaris)
; libswift = $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/libswift.so
; Logic Modeling's SmartModel SWIFT software (Sun4 SunOS)
;[7Cdo setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4SunOS.lib
;[7Cand run "vsim.swift".
; Logic Modeling's SmartModel SWIFT software (Windows NT)
; libswift = $LMC_HOME/lib/pcnt.lib/libswift.dll

```



Note

This “UNIX-like” syntax is valid on NT workstations as well as all UNIX platforms.

4. Compile the MemPro VHDL files into your local `slm_lib`.

a. If you *are* simulating RDRAM MemPro models:

```

% vcom -work slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/mti/src/slm_hdlc.vhd
% vcom -work slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/mti/src/mempro_pkg.vhd
% vcom -work slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/mti/src/rdramd_pkg.vhd

```

b. If you *are not* simulating RDRAM MemPro models:

```

% vcom -work slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/mti/src/slm_hdlc.vhd
% vcom -work slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/mti/src/mempro_pkg.vhd

```

5. After generating a model using MemPro, compile the VHDL code for the model, as shown in the following example:

```

% vcom -work slm_models mymem.vhd

```

6. If you compiled the model to a library (SLM_MODELS in these examples), add a LIBRARY statement to your testbench:

```

LIBRARY SLM_MODELS

```

This makes models in SLM_MODELS accessible from your design. You can refer to the model using a standard VHDL convention, such as a CONFIGURATION statement:

```

CONFIGURATION mymem_a OF mymem_tst IS
  FOR atest
    FOR ALL : mymem use CONFIGURATION SLM_MODELS.mymem_behav;
  END FOR;
END FOR;
END mymem_a;

```

7. Add LIBRARY and USE statements to your testbench:

```
LIBRARY SLM_LIB
USE SLM_LIB.mempro_pkg.all
```

This also provides access to MemPro testbench commands.

For more information on using the MemPro testbench interfaces, refer to the “[HDL Testbench Interface](#)” and “[C Testbench Interface](#)” chapters in the *MemPro User’s Manual*.

8. Instantiate MemPro models in your design. Define ports and generics as required. For information on generics used with MemPro models, refer to “[Instantiating MemPro Models](#)” on page 32. For information on message levels and message level constants, refer to “[Controlling MemPro Model Messages](#)” on page 33.
9. Compile your design as shown in the following example:

```
% vcom design_name
```

10. Invoke the simulator on your design as shown in the following example:

```
% vsim design_name
```

Using Hardware Models with MTI VHDL

To use hardware models with MTI VHDL, follow this procedure:

1. Make sure MTI VHDL is set up properly and all required environment variables are set, as explained in “[Setting Environment Variables](#)” on page 157.
 2. Add the hardware model install tree to your path variable, as shown in the following example:
- ```
% set path=(/install/sms/bin/your_platform/ $path)
```
3. Modify the modelsim.ini or project\_name.mpf file to include the hardware modeling information. Locate the line:

```
[lmc]
```

Remove the semicolons from the `libhm` line and the `libsfi` line you will be changing for your platform. Provide the correct path for the SFI. For example:

```
; ModelSim's interface to Logic Modeling's hardware modeler SFI software
libhm = $MODEL_TECH/libhm.sl
; Logic Modeling's hardware modeler SFI software (HP 9000 Series 700)
libsfi = hardware_model_install_path/lib/platform/libsfi.ext
; Logic Modeling's hardware modeler SFI software (IBM RISC System/6000)
; libsfi = <sfi_dir>/lib/rs6000/libsfi.a
; Logic Modeling's hardware modeler SFI software (Sun4 Solaris)
; libsfi = <sfi_dir>/lib/sun4.solaris/libsfi.so
; Logic Modeling's hardware modeler SFI software (Sun4 SunOS)
; libsfi = <sfi_dir>/lib/sun4.sunos/libsfi.so
; Logic Modeling's hardware modeler SFI software (Window NT)
; libsfi = <sfi_dir>/lib/pent/lm_sfi.dll
```

where *ext* is so for Solaris. a for AIX, or sl for HP-UX.

4. Run the `hm_entity` script to generate a `.vhd` file for the hardware model as shown in the following example. For details on `lm_entity`, refer to [“`hm\_entity` Command Reference” on page 169](#).
5. You are now ready to use the model in your simulation.

## MTI VHDL Example Using TILS299 Hardware Model

Here is an example that uses the TILS299 hardware model. Follow these steps:

1. Put the TILS299 hardware model in the testbench.
2. Create a working library directory by invoking `vsim -gui` and selecting Library/Create. This creates a working directory called `work`.
3. Compile the `.vhd` files, as shown in the following example:

```
% vcom -work work TILS299.vhd TB_TILS299.vhd
```

This step compiles the two VHDL files and puts them in the specified work library. Note that the `TILS299.vhd` file must be specified first or you get an error because the `TB_TILS299.vhd` utilizes the TILS299 entity.

4. Invoke the simulator as shown in the following example:

```
% vsim
```

5. When the window comes up, select the testbench to load.
6. Use the View/Wave pull-down menu to get the wave window. In the wave window, use File/Load Format wave.do to get the waveforms. After the waveform viewer comes up and the `vsim` prompt appears, enter `“run 10000”`.

7. You can also use some of the hardware model utilities listed below, but the commands must be entered at the simulator command prompt because they are not VHDL statements. For the TILS299 example, you can also put these commands into the .do file. Here is an example wave.do file:

```
lm_vectors on /tb_tils299/U0 TEST.VEC
add wave -logic {/clk}
add wave -logic {/clr}
add wave -logic {/s1}
add wave -logic {/s0}
add wave -logic {/g1}
add wave -logic {/g2}
add wave -logic {/sr}
add wave -logic {/sl}
add wave -logic {/qa}
add wave -logic {/qh}
add wave -literal {/t}
```

## hm\_entity Command Reference

The `hm_entity` script creates .vhd files for hardware models.

### Syntax

`hm_entity` [**options**] *shell\_software\_filename*

### Arguments

|     |                                       |
|-----|---------------------------------------|
| -xe | Do not generate entity declaration.   |
| -xa | Do not generate architecture body.    |
| -c  | Generate component declaration        |
| -93 | Use extended identifiers where needed |

## Example

For example, the following `hm_entity` invocation:

```
% hm_entity TILS299.MDL > TILS299.vhd
```

generates a `.vhd` file that looks like the following:

```
 library ieee;
use ieee.std_logic_1164.all;
entity TILS299 is
 generic(DelayRange : STRING := "Max");
 port (G2 : in std_logic;
 CLR : in std_logic;
 SR : in std_logic;
 CLK : in std_logic;
 S0 : in std_logic;
 G1 : in std_logic;
 SL : in std_logic;
 S1 : in std_logic;
 QA : out std_logic;
 QH : out std_logic;
 H : inout std_logic;
 E : inout std_logic;
 G : inout std_logic;
 A : inout std_logic;
 C : inout std_logic;
 B : inout std_logic;
 F : inout std_logic;
 D : inout std_logic);
end;

architecture Hardware of TILS299 is
 attribute FOREIGN : STRING;
 attribute FOREIGN of Hardware : architecture is "hm_init
$MODEL_Tech/libhm.sl; TILS299.MDL";
begin
end Hardware;
```

## MTI VHDL Utilities

The following hardware modeler simulator commands are supported in MTI VHDL:

**lm\_vectors on | off** *instance\_name filename*

The `lm_vectors` utility turns on vector logging for the hardware model instance. The vectors record stimulus to the input and I/O pins and responses from the output and I/O pins during simulation.

**lm\_measure\_timing on | off** *instance\_name filename*

The `lm_measure_timing` utility causes the modeler to measure timing between an input transition and resulting output transition on the hardware model. Note that this is only supported on LM-family systems.

**lm\_timing\_checks on | off** *instance\_name*

The `lm_timing_checks` utility allows you to enable or disable timing checks such as setups and holds.

**lm\_loop\_patterns on | off** *instance\_name*

The `lm_loop_patterns` utility causes the hardware modeler to continually replay the pattern history of a specified device instance.

**lm\_unknowns on | off** *instance\_name*

The `lm_unknowns` utility turns off unknown propagation. This “on\_unknown” feature is also in the .OPT file for hardware models. It modifies the system's default handling of device input and I/O pins that are set to unknown by the simulator. This utility does not turn on unknown propagation unless it is also turned on in the .OPT file, but it can override the setting in the .OPT file to turn this feature off when it is set to on in the .OPT file.



---

# 9

## Using Cyclone with Synopsys Models

---

### Overview

This chapter explains how to use MemPro models and hardware models with Cyclone. The procedures are organized into the following major sections:

- [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 173](#)
- [“Using SmartModels with Cyclone” on page 175](#)
- [“Using FlexModels with Cyclone” on page 175](#)
- [“Using SmartModels with Cyclone” on page 175](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models with Cyclone” on page 176](#)

### Setting Environment Variables

First, set the basic environment variables. If you are not using one of the model types, skip that step. In some cases the procedures that follow in this chapter include steps for setting additional environment variables.

1. Set the LMC\_HOME variable to the location of your MemPro installation tree, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LMC_HOME path_to_models_installation
```

2. Set the LM\_LICENSE\_FILE or SNPSLMD\_LICENSE\_FILE environment variable to point to the product authorization file, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LM_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

```
% setenv SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

You can put license keys for multiple products (for example, MemPro models and hardware models) into the same authorization file. If you need to keep separate authorization files for different products, use a colon-separated list (UNIX) or semicolon-separated list (NT) to specify the search path in your variable setting.



### Caution

Do not include la\_dmon-based authorizations in the same file with snpslmd-based authorizations. If you have authorizations that use la\_dmon, keep them in a separate license file that uses a different license server (lmgrd) process than the one you use for snpslmd-based authorizations.

3. Set the SYNOPSIS\_CY environment variable to point to the Cyclone installation tree, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv SYNOPSIS_CY Cyclone_install_path
```

4. Set the MA\_CY environment variable to point to the ma\_cyclone directory, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv MA_CY ModelAccess_install_path
```

5. If you are using the hardware modeler, set the LM\_DIR and LM\_LIB environment variables, as shown in the following examples:

```
% setenv LM_DIR hardware_model_install_path/sms/lm_dir
% setenv LM_LIB hardware_model_install_path/sms/models: \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/maps
```

If you put your models in a directory other than the default of /sms/models, modify the above variable setting accordingly.

6. Depending on your platform, set your load library variable to point to the platform-specific directory in \$LMC\_HOME, as shown in the following examples:

Solaris:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

Linux:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

AIX:

```
% setenv LIBPATH $LMC_HOME/lib/ibmrs.lib:$LIBPATH
```

HP-UX:

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib:$SHLIB_PATH
```

NT:

Make sure that %LMC\_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib is in the Path user variable.

## Using SmartModels with Cyclone

For information on using SmartModels with Cyclone, refer to [“Using SmartModels with SWIFT Simulators”](#) on page 18.

## Using FlexModels with Cyclone

To use FlexModels with Cyclone, you use Direct C Control. For information on the required SWIFT parameters for FlexModels (which differ from regular SmartModels) and how to use Direct C Control, refer to [“Using FlexModels with SWIFT Simulators”](#) on page 24.

## Using MemPro Models with Cyclone

To use MemPro models with Cyclone, follow this procedure. Note that RDRAM models are not supported on Cyclone.

1. For HP-UX, Cyclone incorrectly uses “hpux10.lib” in paths to platform-specific directories. The correct path leaf should be “hp700.lib.” Correct the paths by creating symbolic links as follows:

```
% ln -s $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib $LMC_HOME/lib/hpux10.lib
% ln -s $LMC_HOME/mempro/lib/hp700.lib $LMC_HOME/mempro/lib/hpux10.lib
```

2. Create a logical library named `slm_lib`. The default physical library mapping for this is `$LMC_HOME/sim/cyclone/lib`, but you can put the `slm_lib` anywhere you want. Add the following line to your `.synopsys_vss.setup` file, and adjust accordingly if you put `slm_lib` anywhere but the default location:

```
SLM_LIB : $LMC_HOME/sim/cyclone/lib
```

3. Compile the MemPro VHDL files into logical library `slm_lib`.

```
% cyan -nc -synthoff -lang vhdl -w slm_lib \
 $LMC_HOME/sim/cyclone/src/slm_hdlc.vhd

% cyan -nc -synthoff -lang vhdl -w slm_lib \
 $LMC_HOME/sim/cyclone/src/mempro_pkg.vhd
```

4. After generating a model using MemPro, compile the VHDL code for the model, as shown in the following example:

```
% cyan -nc -synthoff -lang vhdl mymem.vhd
```

5. If you compiled the model to a library (`SLM_MODELS` in these examples), add a `LIBRARY` statement to your testbench:

```
LIBRARY SLM_MODELS
```

This makes models in SLM\_MODELS accessible from your design. You can refer to the model using a standard VHDL convention, such as a CONFIGURATION statement:

```
CONFIGURATION mymem_a OF mymem_tst IS
 FOR atest
 FOR ALL : mymem use CONFIGURATION SLM_MODELS.mymem_behav;
 END FOR;
END FOR;
END mymem_a;
```

6. Add LIBRARY and USE statements to your testbench:

```
LIBRARY SLM_LIB
USE SLM_LIB.mempro_pkg.all
```

This also provides access to MemPro testbench commands.

For more information on using the MemPro testbench interfaces, refer to the “[HDL Testbench Interface](#)” and “[C Testbench Interface](#)” chapters in the *MemPro User’s Manual*.

7. Instantiate MemPro models in your design. Define ports and generics as required. For information on generics used with MemPro models, refer to “[Instantiating MemPro Models](#)” on page 32. For information on message levels and message level constants, refer to “[Controlling MemPro Model Messages](#)” on page 33.
8. Compile your design as shown in the following example:

```
% cyan design_name.vhd
```

9. Invoke Cyclone on your design as shown in the following example:

```
% cysim (-4state | -2state) -i design_name
```

## Using Hardware Models with Cyclone

This section describes how to set up and configure Release 3.5a of ModelAccess for Cyclone. After completing the setup tasks, for usage information refer to “[Using Hardware Models with Cycle-Based Simulators](#)” on page 184.

The hardware modeling configuration you choose affects the performance you get when running hardware models in Cyclone simulations. This section reviews the fundamentals of the ModelSource and LM-family hardware modeling systems, and then provides guidelines for a number of possible configurations.

## ModelSource System Hardware and Software

If you are using a ModelSource system, your hardware modeling system configuration consists of one or more MS-3400 or MS-3200 units, plus a ModelSource Processor. (For a description of a ModelSource Processor, refer to the *ModelSource Hardware Installation Guide*. For information about the software, refer to the *ModelSource User's Manual*.) The ModelSource Processor is connected to the rest of your network via Ethernet, and to the MS-3400/MS-3200 units via fiber-optic cable.

The ModelSource Processor provides the CPU for the ModelSource units, and at a minimum, it executes the runtime modeler software (RMS) for the modeling system. However, you might decide to run your simulation from the ModelSource Processor workstation as well, unless you are using an LM-1400 as the ModelSource Processor.

The R3.3a and later ModelSource RMS has been enhanced to deliver higher performance in all configurations, and has been optimized to generate the maximum performance gain over previous releases of the RMS when used by a single user running the simulation from the ModelSource Processor workstation. This enhanced release of the RMS is available for Sun Solaris and HP 700 ModelSource Processor workstations.

## LM-1400/LM-family System Hardware and Software

If you are using one of the LM-family hardware model servers (LM-1200 or LM-1400), your hardware modeling system configuration consists of the LM-family unit. This family of modelers includes a dedicated CPU within the modeling system chassis. The LM-family system connects to the rest of your network via Ethernet. The LM-family CPU runs the standard RMS. You run your simulations from other workstations on the Ethernet network.

## Configuration Options

[Figure 7 on page 179](#) illustrates some of the supported Cyclone configurations, labeled from A (the highest performance choice) to D (lower performance options).

### Option A

The recommended configuration for highest performance in cycle-based simulation is an MS-3400 or MS-3200 hardware modeling system with the simulation executing on the ModelSource Processor workstation (which has the SBus or EISA card connection to the modeling systems). This configuration eliminates network overhead in the communication between the modeling system processor and the simulation.

**Option B**

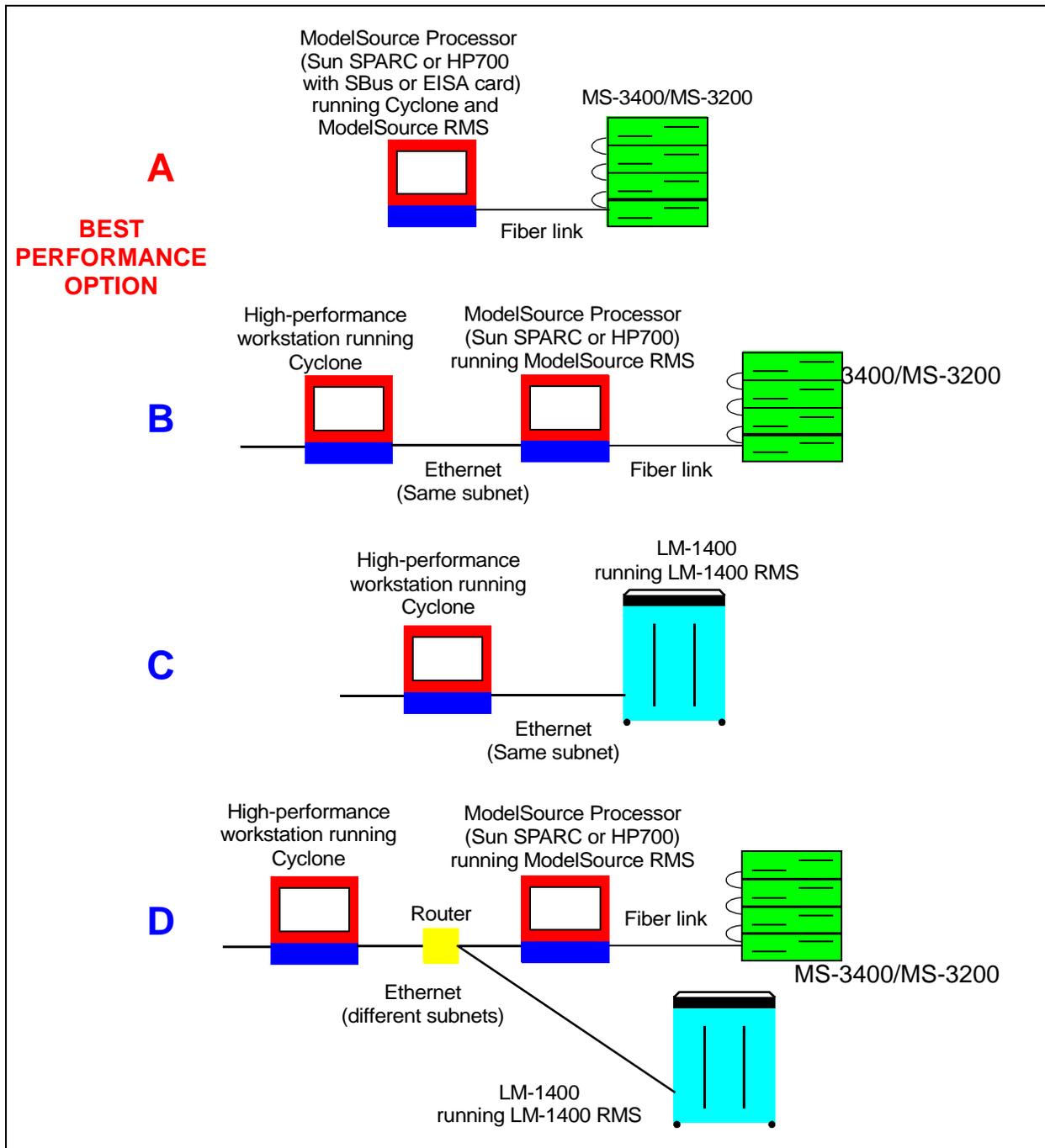
In this configuration, the Cyclone simulation is executing on a different workstation from the ModelSource Processor workstation. In this case, the simulation workstation and the ModelSource Processor workstation must be on the same Ethernet subnet.

**Option C**

Because the LM-1400 has its own dedicated CPU within the LM-1400 chassis, the simulation must be run on a separate workstation. For best performance with an LM-1400 (or any of the LM-family hardware model servers), keep the simulation workstation and the LM-1400 on the same Ethernet subnet.

**Option D**

In this configuration, the hardware modeling system (which can be either a ModelSource system or an LM-family hardware model server) exists on a different Ethernet subnet from the workstation on which the Cyclone simulation is running. Because of the extra overhead of the router, this is a lower performance configuration.



**Figure 7: Cyclone Configuration Guidelines**

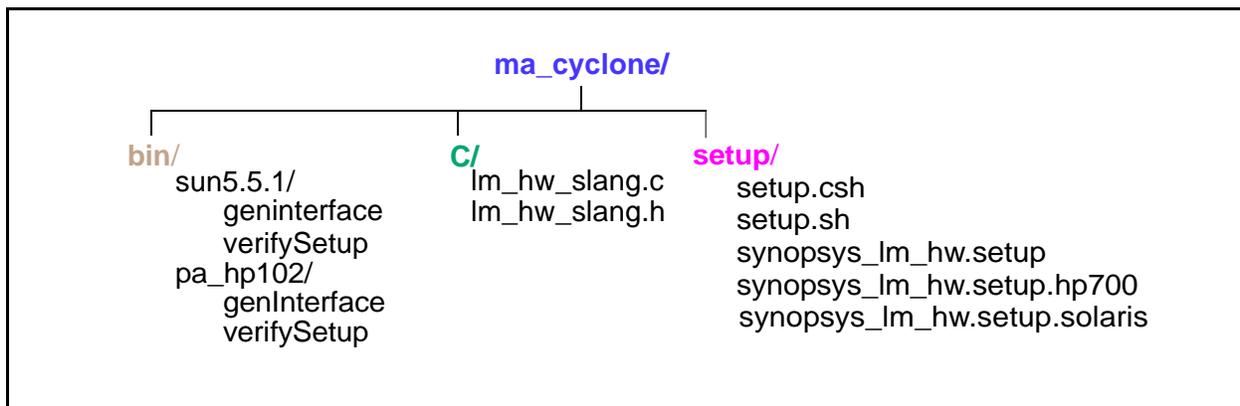
## Cyclone User Setup

Before proceeding with the setup instructions that follow, perform these tasks:

- Install the Cyclone simulator package as described in the *Cyclone Installation Guide*.
- Install and configure the hardware modeling system, including hardware and software (R3.5a or later), as outlined in the Quick Reference in Chapter 1 of either the *ModelSource Hardware Installation Guide* or the *LM-family Hardware Installation Guide*.
- If necessary, boot the modeler.
- Make sure all required environment variables are set, as explained in “[Setting Environment Variables](#)” on page 173

### The ma\_cyclone Software Tree

The ModelAccess for Cyclone (ma\_cyclone) directory structure is illustrated in [Figure 8](#).



**Figure 8: ModelAccess for Cyclone Installation Tree**

The setup process consists of the following tasks:

- “[Setting Up Your Environment](#)” on page 181
- “[Running verifySetup](#)” on page 181
- “[Running geninterface](#)” on page 181.
- “[Confirming License File Settings \(ModelSource Only\)](#)” on page 183.

## Setting Up Your Environment

Make sure all required environment variables are set properly, as explained in [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 173](#). If any of the required environment variables are not defined, the source command will fail, with an error message indicating the cause of the error.

## Running verifySetup

Run the provided verifySetup program. This verifies that your environment is set up correctly so that genInterface can run.

1. To run verifySetup, change directory to /tmp, then execute verifySetup, as follows:

```
% cd /tmp
% verifySetup
```

The verifySetup program returns messages confirming the setup information that will be used (both the environment setup information, and the genInterface setup options taken from the synopsys\_lm\_hw.setup file). For example, if the hardware modeling system is not booted and available on the network, verifySetup reports the error.

```
% verifySetup
Copyright 1988-1996 Synopsys, Incorporated.; 05 Sep 1996; R1.0

**** Environment Setup ****
User home: /home/klt
MA_CY: /tools/lmc/sms/ma_cyclone
LM include directory: /tools/lmc/sms/include
LM library directory: /tools/lmc/sms/lib/sun4.solaris
CY include directory: /tools/cyclone/sparcOS5/cyclone/include

**** Setup Files ****
Modeler: engineering1
SFI ERROR: modeler not responding (Message Number: 972)
```

## Running geninterface

The genInterface program takes hardware model Shell Software files as input, and creates the following files:

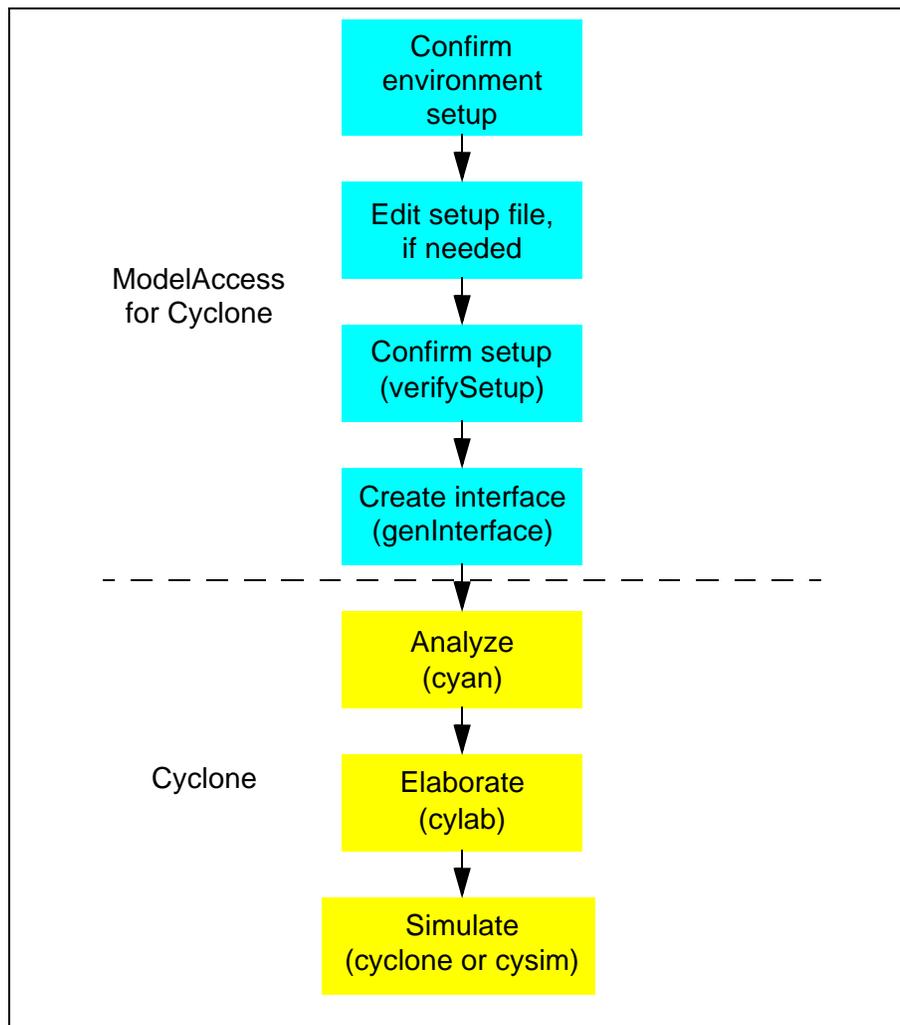
- A VHDL shell for each hardware model you specified
- A dynamically-linkable C library, which is used in communicating simulator requirements to/from the hardware modeling system (via the hardware modeling Simulator Function Interface software)

With the output of `genInterface`, you proceed as with any other VHDL input by compiling the hardware model VHDL files (elaborate and analyze) along with your other VHDL design files and then simulating the design. [Figure 9](#) gives an overview of the entire process, and the following sections describe each step in detail.

Invoke `genInterface` from the directory in which you want the interface files to be created. On the command line, specify the hardware models you want to use with Cyclone. For details on `genInterface` syntax, refer to [“genInterface Command Reference” on page 188](#)

**Note**

The `genInterface` program relies on the software described in [“Cyclone genInterface Setup Files” on page 192](#). The `verifySetup` program helps you verify that these prerequisites have been set up correctly.



**Figure 9: Process Flow Chart**

## Confirming License File Settings (ModelSource Only)

The genInterface program is not license-protected. However, in order to use the output of genInterface to run Cyclone simulations with ModelSource hardware models, several licenses are required:

- MSCBS licenses the use of hardware models with cycle-based simulators.
- MS3400 or MS3200 specifies the number of MS-3400 or MS-3200 units licensed.

In addition, you need the appropriate licenses to run Cyclone.



### Note

The LM-family hardware model servers (LM-1400 and LM-1200) are not license-protected and do not have a license file. This step is required only for ModelSource systems (MS-3400, MS-3200).

For information about installing hardware model licenses or updating an existing license file, refer to the [Hardware Modeling Release Notes](#). To confirm that your licenses are working correctly, follow these steps:

1. Invoke the lm utilities:

```
% lm
Copyright 1988-1996 Synopsys, Incorporated.; 17 Aug 1998; R3.4a
Default Modeler is "venkat"
LM Utilities Menu
1) Create Logic Models
2) Verify Logic Models
3) Perform Maintenance
4) Run Diagnostics
5) Show Modeler Configuration
h) Help
q) Quit
selection:
```

2. Select item 5, “Show Modeler Configuration”.

```
selection: 5
Modeler Configuration
1) Show Modelers
2) Show Logic Models
3) Show Users
4) Show Versions
5) Show Model Users
6) Show Licenses
h) Help
q) Quit
selection:
```

### 3. Select item 6, “Show Licenses”.

```

selection: 6
Modeler Name (* = ALL) [venkat]:
 License Server set to: 5300@hal
"venkat" Licenses Used
 No licenses being used on the modeler
"venkat" Total Licenses Present in the License File
 Feature # licenses Version Exp. Date
MSFAULTYes3.400 31-Dec-1999
MSCBSYes 3.400 31-Dec-1999
MS3400100 3.400 31-Dec-1999
MS3200100 3.400 31-Dec-1999
+++++

```

## Using Hardware Models with Cycle-Based Simulators

ModelAccess for Cyclone allows you to prepare your hardware models for use in a Cyclone cycle-based simulation. This section describes how to use hardware models in a Cyclone simulation. We begin with an overview of hardware modeling in the Cyclone environment and then provide instructions for using genInterface.

### Timing Delays

Synopsys hardware models typically include pin-to-pin delay information and can optionally include timing checks. However, in cycle-based simulation, the simulator ignores delay information and timing checks in the hardware models.

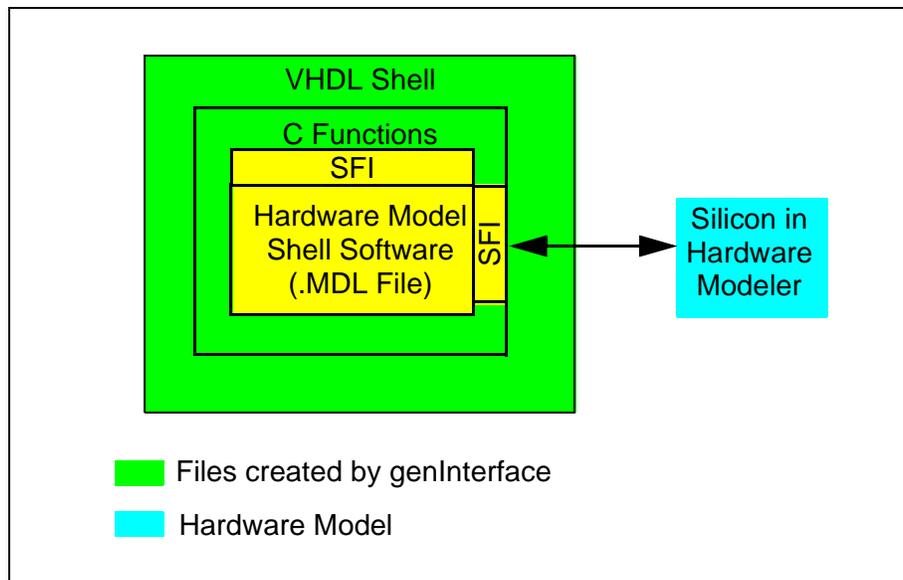
### Cycle-Based Simulation Constraints

Before using a hardware model in cycle-based simulation, review the design, coding, and testbench guidelines provided in the Cyclone documentation set. Although there are no inherent limitations because of hardware modeling technology (when compared to a VHDL model or C-language model of the same device), you must follow the same usage guidelines for a circuit using hardware models as you would follow for a circuit using any other types of models, when creating a cycle-based simulation testbench.

## How Hardware Models Interface with Cyclone

Cyclone provides the Slang C-language interface to enable you to integrate external C and C++ models into the Cyclone runtime environment. Hardware models are also integrated into the Cyclone environment using a special-purpose implementation of the Slang interface.

A Slang C (or C++) software model consists of a collection of C language entry points, compiled into a shared object library, plus a VHDL shell that determines which entry points are called at runtime. A Slang hardware model requires a shared object library, one VHDL shell per model, the hardware model's Shell Software, and the model itself, installed in the hardware modeler. A conceptual diagram of a Slang hardware model is shown in [Figure 10](#).



**Figure 10: Slang Hardware Model Conceptual Diagram**



**Note**

The genInterface program creates the C library and VHDL shell files needed by Cyclone to evaluate hardware models.

## Editing the Setup File

The genInterface program has its own setup file (`synopsys_lm_hw.setup`) that you use to specify various options to be applied to the entire genInterface session, or to particular models within the session, including:

- Deleting intermediate files
- Overwriting existing files
- Overwriting pin names (per model)

Default values are provided for all required items, so you only need to edit this file if you want to alter the default values. If you decide to edit the file, copy it from `$MA_CY/setup/synopsys_lm_hw.setup` to your own local working directory. The copy must be renamed to `.synopsys_lm_hw.setup`. Now you can edit and customize the local `.synopsys_lm_hw.setup` file appropriately for your session.

If you want to change the global settings on a Solaris system, you must edit the following file:

```
$MA_CY/setup/synopsys_lm_hw.setup.solaris
```

(The other file extension is `.hp700`.)

To change the file, copy lines from the default `synopsys_lm_hw_setup` file shown in [Figure 11](#) and uncomment the lines.

```
delete_files yes # default yes
overwrite_files no # default no

for PPC403GA use
delete_files yes
overwrite_files no
pin_name_ovr "-DSR/-CTS" "NSRSCTS"
pin_name_ovr "-HALT" "NHALT"
```

**Figure 11: Default `synopsys_lm_hw.setup` File**

### Deleting Intermediate Files

```
delete_files {yes|no} # default yes
```

By default, genInterface deletes the intermediate files it creates. If you want to retain the intermediate files, specify “`delete_files no`” in the setup file and delete the leading ‘#’ character. (Typically, you need to save these files only for debugging purposes; the files are not used by Cyclone.)

## Overwriting Existing Files

```
overwrite_files {yes|no} # default no
```

By default, genInterface does not overwrite files in the target directory. This is to protect you from accidentally overwriting earlier versions of .vhd files that you might have customized. If genInterface detects a file with the same name in the target directory, it generates the following warning:

```
genInterface warning: retaining older version of ./model_name.vhd file
```

If you receive this warning, you must choose one of the following:

- If you want to save the old .vhd files, rename them, and then run genInterface again. You can add your custom code to the newly-updated .vhd files.
- If you don't want to save the old .vhd files, delete them from the target directory or change the `overwrite_files` setting to `yes` before you run genInterface/



---

### Attention

Whenever you receive this warning, you must correct the situation and re-run genInterface so that a complete, integrated set of .vhd files and the corresponding C library are created. The genInterface program keys the results of each session, so if you attempt to mix files from different genInterface sessions in your Cyclone simulation, you receive a fatal simulation error (LM\_HW integration error: Keys do not match).

---

## Selecting Options Per Model

The `synopsys_lm_hw.setup` file allows you to set specific options per model, including the following:

- `delete_files`
- `overwrite_files`
- `cflags -DLM_HW_DEBUG`
- `pin_name_ovr`

The `cflags` debugging options are intended for system administrators, and are explained in [“cflags” on page 193](#).

The `pin_name_ovr` statement, which enables the overwriting of automatically-generated pin names, is only available on a per-model basis, as explained below.

## Overwriting Pin Names Per Model

The Shell Software syntax for hardware model pin names uses special characters and VHDL keywords that are not allowed in legal VHDL signal names. Therefore, when genInterface creates VHDL shells for each model, it converts illegal VHDL signal names to legal equivalents. This process is explained in [“Rules for Signal Renaming” on page 194](#). If you prefer to use your own VHDL signal names, you can use the pin\_name\_ovr statement to specify the mapping from the original name to the new name.

The syntax for this statement is:

```
for model_name use
 pin_name_ovr "shell_sw_name1" "VHDLname1"
 pin_name_ovr "shell_sw_name2" "VHDLname2"
end
```

For example, the pin name -ALE is allowed in the Shell Software, but not in VHDL. By default, genInterface removes the leading hyphen (-) and replaces it with the string NE\_, creating the new pin name NE\_ALE. If you prefer the alternate legal name NALE, add the following lines to your setup file:

```
for I80960M use
 pin_name_ovr "-ALE" "NALE"
end
```

## genInterface Command Reference

After successfully running verifySetup, you can run genInterface, specifying the hardware models you want to include in Cyclone simulation.

### Syntax

```
genInterface {-m modeler_name} [mdlfile1 mdlfile2 ... | -f model_list | -a]
```

### Arguments

**-m modeler\_name** This optional switch specifies the hardware modeling system for genInterface to use. The modeler must be installed on the network and be booted and running. If a modeler\_name is not specified, genInterface searches the modelers.lis file for the name of an available modeler.

The modeler does not need to have the hardware model installed; it must only be booted and running Runtime Modeler Software v3.3 or later.

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>mdlfile1</i>      | You can list individual models by their Model (.MDL) file name, such as IPENTIUM.MDL. \Separate multiple file names with a blank (space) character.                 |
| <i>-f model_list</i> | You can create a file listing the Model (.MDL) files to be included. Create the file with one .MDL file name per line.                                              |
| <i>-a</i>            | The <i>-a</i> option allows you to generate an interface that includes all available model files found in directories specified by the LM_LIB environment variable. |




---

**Hint**

The *-a* option is convenient when you want to create one interface incorporating all hardware models in your environment. However, depending on how your LM\_LIB environment variable is set, this could be a large file.

---

## Examples

The following example creates interface files for the hardware models listed in the “my.models” file:

```
% genInterface -f my.models
```

The following example creates interface files for all hardware models in the LM\_LIB search path, using the hardware modeling system named “engineering1”:

```
% genInterface -m engineering1 -a
```

The following example creates interface files for the hardware models IPENTIUMPRO, I82451GX, I82452GX, I82453GX, and I82454GX:

```
% genInterface IPENTIUMPRO.MDL I82451GX.MDL I82452GX.MDL \
I82453GX.MDL I82454GX.MDL
```

Assuming that all setup files have been left at their default values, the *genInterface* command creates the following files in the current directory:

- liblm\_hw.so (Solaris only)
- IPENTIUMPRO.vhd
- I82451GX.vhd
- I82452GX.vhd
- I82453GX.vhd
- I82454GX.vhd

The following example shows `genInterface` executed on the ID3052EA hardware model (Model file ID3052EA.MDL):

```
% genInterface -m engineering1 ID3052EA.MDL
Copyright 1988-1996 Synopsys, Incorporated.; 05 Sep 1996; R1.0

Processing Common files.....Done
Processing ID3052EA.MDL file.....Done
Running make....Done
Running clean....Done
```

This command creates one dynamic library and a “.vhd” file for each model specified in the command line. For the Solaris example shown above, the `liblm_hw.so` library and `ID3052E.vhd` file are created.

The `genInterface` program requires an ANSI C compiler. If you receive compiler errors while attempting to run `genInterface`, for information about updating setup files, refer to [“Cyclone `genInterface` Setup Files” on page 192](#).

## Cyclone Simulation

After successfully running `verifySetup` and `genInterface`, you can simulate using Cyclone. For detailed information on using Cyclone, refer to the *Cyclone Reference Manual*. Following are some Cyclone usage notes for hardware models.

### Analyzing the Design

You analyze the generated VHDL files (created by `genInterface`), just as you would any other files in your design.

### Elaborating and Simulating the Design

#### Performance Monitoring

You can monitor the performance of the hardware modeler and append the results to the simulator log file after simulation. To enable performance monitoring, in the window where you are running the simulator, enter the following:

```
% setenv LM_OPTION "monitor_performance"
```

For more information, refer to “Performance Monitoring” in the *ModelSource User’s Manual*.

## 2-state and 4-state Simulation

If you are using Release 1.1 or later of ModelAccess for Cyclone with Cyclone Release 1998.02 or later, you can specify either 2-state (0, 1) or 4-state (0, 1, X, Z) simulation. However, for earlier releases, 2-state simulation is not supported; when running `cylab`, you must specify `-4state` to create 4-state (0, 1, X, Z) code. Similarly, for earlier releases you must specify `-4state` for 4-state simulation with `cysim`.

## Defining LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH

When using the output of `genInterface` with Cyclone, the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable must include “.” (the current directory). This is also required by Cyclone, so if you have set `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` as documented in the Cyclone user documentation, `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` will be correct for `genInterface`.

## Cyclone Elaboration Warnings

Cyclone issues two elaboration warnings for each hardware model in your design. This is because Cyclone divides the circuit into two types of blocks, sequential and combinatorial. At every clock edge the sequential blocks get executed first, and then the combinatorial blocks get executed. The hardware model is neither fully sequential nor fully combinatorial, so Cyclone declares it as a special block. Cyclone discourages you from using special blocks by issuing warnings; however, special blocks are fine for hardware models, so you can ignore the warnings for hardware models.

## “Keys Do Not Match” Error Message

If you receive the following error message during Cyclone simulation:

```
LM_HW integration error: Keys do not match
```

this indicates that you do not have a consistent set of `genInterface` output; for example, the `liblm_hw.so` file was not generated in the same `genInterface` session as one or more of the `.vhd` files, so the information is not valid for simulation. This can occur if you run `genInterface` more than once on the same hardware model files with the `overwrite_files` option left at its default setting of “no.”

To correct this error, refer to [“Overwriting Existing Files” on page 187](#); then rerun `genInterface` on the complete set of hardware models you want to use in the Cyclone simulation. Analyze and elaborate the new `genInterface` output before proceeding with your simulation.

## Cyclone genInterface Setup Files

This section describes the ModelAccess for Cyclone setup file syntax and usage.

### Setup File Definition

Two sets of setup files are provided for genInterface:

1. Model-dependent setup information is stored in the following file:

```
$MA_CY/setup/synopsys_lm_hw.setup
```

This file is typically copied by each user from this central location into their own directory, where it can be edited for a particular session. Use of this setup file is described in [“Editing the Setup File” on page 186](#).

2. System-dependent setup information is stored in these three platform-specific files:

- \$MA\_CY/setup/synopsys\_lm\_hw.setup.hp700
- \$MA\_CY/setup/.synopsys\_lm\_hw.setup.solaris

These files are provided to allow a system administrator to update compiler and linker information, if necessary. If the ANSI C compiler (acc) is used, then no editing of these files should be required.

### Search Path

Upon invocation, the genInterface program searches for the synopsys\_lm\_hw.setup file and the synopsys\_lm\_hw.setup.*platform* files in the following locations, in the order listed:

1. Current working directory (files preceded by “.”)
2. User’s home directory (files preceded by “.”)
3. \$MA\_CY/setup (files without a “.” prefix).

### System-Dependent Setup Options

The system-dependent setup files allow you to change default settings for genInterface. A sample of the HP-UX version of the file is shown in [Figure 12](#).

```
compiler acc # default acc

cflags values are cumulative
cflags +z +DA1.1 +DS2.0
cflags -fPIC # default -fPIC
cflags -DLM_HW_DEBUG
cflags -DLM_HW_PIN_DEBUG

linker ld # default ld

lflag values are cumulative
lflags -b # default -b
```

**Figure 12: Sample System-Dependent Setup File  
(.synopsys\_lm\_hw.setup.hp700)**

### compiler

The genInterface program requires access to a C compiler. The ANSI C compiler (acc), which is required for use with Cyclone, is also recommended for genInterface.

By default, genInterface searches for the acc compiler. If this is not correct for your environment, update the information following the compiler keyword, as follows:

```
compiler gcc
```

### cflags

The -DLM\_HW\_DEBUG and -DLM\_HW\_PIN\_DEBUG flags create a special, debug version of the Cyclone interface. By default, these options are always commented out (preceded by a #). There is no need to enable these options unless you are requested to do so by the Synopsys Technical Support Center.

### linker and lflags

By default, genInterface uses the ld linker with the flags specified in each platform-dependent setup file. If you choose to use another linker, contact the Synopsys Technical Support Center. For instructions, refer to [“Getting Help” on page 14](#).

## Cyclone genInterface Processing

This section describes how genInterface processes input Shell Software to create the VHDL shell needed by Cyclone. Note that genInterface ignores .NAM files when processing pin names.

## Rules for Signal Renaming

Because certain characters and keywords are permitted in Shell Software pin names but are illegal as VHDL signal names, genInterface must convert these signal names in order to generate correct VHDL. The rules that genInterface uses to map the signal names to legal values are explained in the following sections.

The following rules are applied by default. You can explicitly specify the mapping for any signal name by using the `pin_name_ovr` statement in the genInterface setup file, as described in [“Overwriting Pin Names Per Model” on page 188](#).

### Renaming Buses

The genInterface program sorts all pins in ascending order. Groups of pins having the same basename are combined into buses. If part of the bus is in a different mode (for example, inout and out), then the bus is split by mode, and the basenames are made unique.

For example, consider the following bus, described in the Shell Software:

```
out_pin
 A[21:12] = 110,109,108,107 106,105,104,103,99,98

io_pin
 A[11:6] = 97, 96, 95, 94, 93, 92
 A[29:22] = 119,118,117,116,115,114,113,112
```

This is converted as follows in the generated VHDL file:

```
A : INOUT std_logic_vector(11 downto 6);
AA : OUT std_logic_vector(21 downto 12);
AB : INOUT std_logic_vector(29 downto 22);
```

### Replacing Special Characters

Cyclone allows only alphanumeric characters and underscores (`_`) in the generation of valid signal names. Hardware model Shell Software allows special characters such as slash (`/`), asterisk (`*`), minus (`-`), and underscore (`_`).

The genInterface program follows the conversion rules specified in [Table 21](#).

**Table 21: Rules for Special Character Mapping**

| Character in Shell Software | Conversion when at beginning of name | Conversion when appearing within name | Conversion when at end of name |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Slash (/)                   | SL_                                  | _SL_                                  | _SL                            |
| Star (*)                    | ST_                                  | _ST_                                  | _ST                            |
| Minus (-)                   | NE_                                  | _NE_                                  | _NE                            |

**Table 21: Rules for Special Character Mapping (Continued)**

| Character in Shell Software | Conversion when at beginning of name | Conversion when appearing within name | Conversion when at end of name |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Underscore (_)              | UN_                                  | _ (no conversion)                     | _UN                            |
| Any other special character | Random alphanumeric                  | Random alphanumeric                   | Random alphanumeric            |

For every generated name, genInterface then compares the name with the present list of names. If there is a match, a random string is added at the end of the name until it is unique.

The following examples illustrate how genInterface converts existing Shell Software names in the generated VHDL file.

```
'-CS' is converted to: NE_CS
'-BM0/BYTE' is converted to: NE_BM0_SL_BYTE
'DT/-R' is converted to: DT_SL_NE_R
'-TOUT2/-IRQ3' is converted to: NE_TOUT2_SL_NE_IRQ3
'IO94_-RCLK_-BUSY/RDY' is converted to: IO94_NE_RCLK_NE_BUSY_SL_RDY
```

### Keyword Replacement

Certain VHDL keywords cannot be used as signal names (for example, IN, OUT, PROCESS). The genInterface program scans the list of signal names replaces disallowed *keyword* is found, that name is replaced by *S\_keyword*. If another signal already exists by this name, a random string is appended to the end of the present signal name.

For example, the Shell Software notation:

```
IN[6:1]
```

would be converted as follows:

```
S_IN : IN std_logic_vector(6 downto 1);
```



---

# 10

## Using Leapfrog with Synopsys Models

---

### Overview

This chapter explains how to use SmartModels, FlexModels, MemPro models, and hardware models with Leapfrog. The procedures are organized into the following major sections:

- [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 197](#)
- [“Using SmartModels with Leapfrog” on page 199](#)
- [“Using FlexModels with Leapfrog” on page 200](#)
- [“Using MemPro Models with Leapfrog” on page 200](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models with Leapfrog” on page 203](#)

### Setting Environment Variables

First, set the basic environment variables. If you are not using one of the model types, skip that step. In some cases the procedures that follow in this chapter include steps for setting additional environment variables.

1. Set the LMC\_HOME variable to the location of your SmartModel, FlexModel, and MemPro model installation tree, as follows:

```
% setenv LMC_HOME path_to_models_installation
```

- Set the `LM_LICENSE_FILE` or `SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE` environment variable to point to the product authorization file, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LM_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
% setenv SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

You can put license keys for multiple products (for example, SmartModels and hardware models) into the same authorization file. If you need to keep separate authorization files for different products, use a colon-separated list (UNIX) or semicolon-separated list (NT) to specify the search path in your variable setting.



### Caution

Do not include `la_dmon`-based authorizations in the same file with `snpslmd`-based authorizations. If you have authorizations that use `la_dmon`, keep them in a separate license file that uses a different license server (`lmgrd`) process than the one you use for `snpslmd`-based authorizations.

- If you are using the hardware modeler, set the `LM_DIR` and `LM_LIB` environment variables, as shown in the following examples:

```
% setenv LM_DIR hardware_model_install_path/sms/lm_dir
% setenv LM_LIB hardware_model_install_path/sms/models: \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/maps
```

If you put your models in a directory other than the default of `/sms/models`, modify the above variable setting accordingly.

- Set the `CDS_VHDL` variable to the location of your Leapfrog installation and make sure that Leapfrog is set up properly in your environment.
- Depending on your platform, set your load library variable to point to the platform-specific directory in `$LMC_HOME`, as shown in the following examples:

Solaris:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

Linux:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

AIX:

```
% setenv LIBPATH $LMC_HOME/lib/ibmrs.lib:$LIBPATH
```

HP-UX:

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib:$SHLIB_PATH
```

NT:

Make sure that `%LMC_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib` is in the Path user variable.

# Using SmartModels with Leapfrog

To use SmartModels with Leapfrog, follow this procedure:

1. To build the SmartModel interface, first cd to the lib directory in the Cadence tree and execute the lfsmGen command:

```
% cd $CDS_VHDL/lib
% lfsmGen
```

This step produces a liblfsm.so.1.1 file on SunOS, liblfsm.so on Solaris, liblfsm.sl on HP-UX, and liblfsm.a on AIX.

2. To build the VHDL libraries needed to simulate with SmartModels, cd to the \$CDS\_VHDL/bin directory and execute the lfsmLibPckGen command:

```
% cd $CDS_VHDL/bin
% lfsmLibPckGen
```

This step produces a lfsmLibPck file.

3. Determine where you want the SmartModel VHDL libraries to go and cd to that location. Then execute the lfsmLibPck you built in the previous step.

```
% lfsmLibPck
```

This step can take 30 minutes or more. When the process completes you get the following two VHDL files that you need to analyze in LeapFrog:

- SMILibrary.vhd
- SMpackage.vhd

The SMILibrary.vhd file contains entity-architecture pairs for all SmartModels in your \$LMC\_HOME tree. These include the generics used to configure SmartModel SWIFT parameters.

Note that SmartModels are identified as follows:

```
attribute FOREIGN of SmartModel : architecture is
"LFM:LFSmartModels" ;
```

The SMpackage.vhd file contains component declarations for the SmartModels. You must specify required SWIFT parameters for every generic in a component that you want to simulate within Leapfrog. For more information on required SWIFT parameters, refer to [“Using SmartModels with SWIFT Simulators” on page 18](#).

**Caution**

On the HP platform all users must use the same \$LMC\_HOME in order to prevent erroneous simulation results or fatal simulation errors. This precaution is necessary because the lfsmGen command modifies the liblfsm.sl file to require \$LMC\_HOME, and on the HP platform the liblfsm.sl file references an absolute path name to libswift.sl, the SWIFT library. When the absolute path name is not the same as the user's \$LMC\_HOME, the result is the loading of two different versions of libswift.sl during the simulation.

## Using FlexModels with Leapfrog

To use Leapfrog with FlexModels, follow the same steps laid out for SmartModels in “Using SmartModels with Leapfrog” on page 199. On Leapfrog, you use FlexModels with Direct C Control. For information on the required SWIFT parameters for FlexModels (which differ from regular SmartModels) and how to use Direct C Control, refer to “Using FlexModels with SWIFT Simulators” on page 24.

## Using MemPro Models with Leapfrog

To use MemPro models with Leapfrog, follow this procedure:

1. If you have built your own Foreign Model Interface (FMI) shared library, you need to perform this step in order to combine your shared library with the MemPro FMI shared library.

**Attention**

If you do not build your own FMI library, skip to Step 3.

Leapfrog binds in only one shared FMI library at runtime. If your design uses FMI, you need to build a new FMI shared library that contains your library and the MemPro library. A MemPro archive library can be found at:

HP-UX

```
$LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/libfmi_ar.a
```

Solaris

```
$LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/libfmi_ar.a
```

You must create a new archive that includes the MemPro archive, library table file declaration object file, and your archive. Detailed instructions for this process can be found in “Foreign Model Integration” in the *Cadence Leapfrog C Interface User Guide*.

As shown in the following example, you must combine the contents of the MemPro library table file with your own FMI application library table:

```
#include <fmilib.h>

extern fmiModelTableT CpipeModelTable;
extern fmiModelTableT myFMITable;

fmiLibraryTableT fmiLibraryTable = {
 {"Cpipe", CpipeModelTable},
 {"myFMILib", myFMITable},
 {0, 0}
};
```

Link the MemPro archive library with the new library table object file and any other FMI application object files you wish to include, following the instructions in the *Cadence C Interface User Guide*.

The following examples show compiling the library table object files and linking MemPro libfm\_ar.a with the library table object file and the FMI application you developed, shown in the examples as new\_FMI\_table.o and *your\_archive.a*:

#### HP-UX

```
% /bin/cc -D_NO_PROTO -c +Z -I$CDS_VHDL/include new_FMI_table.c
% /bin/ld -b -o libfmi.sl new_FMI_table.o your_archive.a \
 $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/libfmi_ar.a
```

#### Solaris

```
% /opt/SUNWspro/bin/cc -c -KPIC -I$CDS_VHDL/include new_FMI_table.c
% /opt/SUNWspro/bin/cc -G -o libfmi.so new_FMI_table.o \
 your_archive.a $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/libfmi_ar.a
```

2. Set up the library search path to locate the MemPro shared library.



#### Attention

You must add the MemPro shared library to the beginning of your SHLIB\_PATH or LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH contents. If the MemPro shared library is added to the tail of the path list, the library search order will be incorrect and Leapfrog will not simulate properly.

#### HP-UX

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib:$SHLIB_PATH
```

Solaris

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH \
 $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

3. Create a logical library named `slm_lib`. The default physical library mapping for this is `$LMC_HOME/sim/leapfrog/lib`. If you do not want to install the library in the `LMC_HOME` tree, you can create it in any other location.

Add the following line to your `cds.lib` file:

```
define slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/leapfrog/lib
```

4. Compile the MemPro VHDL files into logical library `slm_lib`. Note that `rdramd_pkg.vhd` is not required unless you are simulating RDRAM MemPro models.

```
% cv -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/leapfrog/src/slm_hdlc.vhd
% cv -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/leapfrog/src/mempro_pkg.vhd
% cv -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/leapfrog/src/rdramd_pkg.vhd
```

5. After generating a model using MemPro, compile the VHDL code for the model, as shown in the following example:

```
% cv mymem.vhd
```

6. If you compiled the model to a library (`SLM_MODELS` in these examples), add a `LIBRARY` statement to your testbench:

```
LIBRARY SLM_MODELS
```

This makes models in `SLM_MODELS` accessible from your design. You can refer to the model using a standard VHDL convention, such as a `CONFIGURATION` statement:

```
CONFIGURATION mymem_a OF mymem_tst IS
 FOR atest
 FOR ALL : mymem use CONFIGURATION SLM_MODELS.mymem_behav;
 END FOR;
 END FOR;
END mymem_a;
```

7. Add `LIBRARY` and `USE` statements to your testbench:

```
LIBRARY SLM_LIB
USE SLM_LIB.mempro_pkg.all
```

This also provides access to MemPro testbench commands.

For more information on using the MemPro testbench interfaces, refer to the “[HDL Testbench Interface](#)” and “[C Testbench Interface](#)” chapters in the *MemPro User’s Manual*.

8. Instantiate MemPro models in your design. Define ports and generics as required. For information on generics used with MemPro models, refer to [“Instantiating MemPro Models” on page 32](#). For information on message levels and message level constants, refer to [“Controlling MemPro Model Messages” on page 33](#).
9. Compile your design as shown in the following example:

```
% cv -w work design_name
```

10. Invoke Leapfrog on your design as shown in the following example:

```
% sv design_name
```

## Using Hardware Models with Leapfrog

To use hardware models with Leapfrog, follow this procedure. For the latest information on supported features, refer to the Cadence documentation.

1. Make sure Leapfrog is set up properly and all required environment variables are set, as explained in [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 197](#).
2. Add the hardware model install tree to your path variable, as shown in the following example:

```
% set path=(/install/sms/bin/platform/ $path)
```

3. Run the `install.sh` script so that the hardware models option is turned on and the `LMlibrary.vhd`, `LMpackage.vhd`, and `LMproc.vhd` are created. Also make sure the `cds.lib` file points to the correct libraries, including `LMSFI`, which is located in the install area.
4. Create your own library directory for files that will be generated for the hardware model. In the Leapfrog Notebook, you can set up the directory so that the library files get placed in there by using the Library menu.
5. Generate a custom Leapfrog simulator executable (`sv`) to work with the hardware model and imported Verilog model. This is done in the `install.sh`. The install generates a new `svlog.exe`. When this completes, you are ready to run using the custom `sv` executable.

## Leapfrog Example with TILS299 Hardware Model

The following example uses the TILS299 hardware model to show how to set up hardware models for use with Leapfrog:

1. Create a testbench to instantiate the hardware model (for example, `TB_TILS299.vhd`).

2. Invoke Leapfrog. This brings up the Notebook window, where you can compile, elaborate, and simulate your VHDL testbench. Type “leapfrog&”.
3. In the Notebook window, select your .vhd testbench file and click on the compile button.
4. Once compiled, use the Unit menu and select elaborate. Fill in the Design Unit with your compiled information and fill the snapshot with SIM. For example, mywork is the directory specified to place compiled work, so we use mywork.TB.TILS299.
5. To simulate, select simulate from the Unit menu and fill in the information for simulating in the snapshot line. For example: mywork.tb\_tils299:test/sim. This syntax can also be found at the end of the elaborate.
6. To see waveforms, use the simulator window to select Tools > Navigator. When you select the hardware model instance in the subscopes, the signal pins come up in the Object window. Select all the signals to be traced in the waveforms and right-click to select Set trace simple.
7. Go back to the simulator window and select Tools > Waveview. When the cwaves window comes up with all your signal pins, click on run on the simulator window to simulate.

## Leapfrog Utilities

The following hardware modeler simulator commands are supported in Leapfrog:

**lm\_log\_test\_vectors** (“*instance\_name*”, **1/0**, “*filename*”);

enables (1) or disables (0) vector logging for hardware models.

**lm\_timing\_measurements** (“*instance\_name*”, **1/0**, “*filename*”);

Enables (1) or disables (0) timing measurements for hardware models.

**lm\_enable\_timing\_checks** ([*device\_name(s)....*])

Enables timing checks for hardware models.

**lm\_disable\_timing\_checks** ([*device\_name(s)....*])

Disables timing checks for hardware models.

**lm\_unknowns** (“*option=value*”, ....**device\_or\_pin**);

Determines how unknown values are handled by hardware models. Supported options include:

- propagate=yes/no
- value=previous/high/low

- `sequence_count=0-20`
- `random_seed=0-65535`
- `device_or_pin`

**lm\_loop\_instance** (*[instance\_name]*);

Makes the hardware modeler enter loop mode, where it continually replays the pattern history of the specified instance.

**lm\_pam\_shortage**("actions=save/sleep/finish/free/suspend/drop\_faults",  
"sleep\_minutes=n", "sleep\_count=n", "save\_file=filename");

Lets you specify the action the hardware modeler is to take when it has used up most of the available pattern memory.

**lm\_pattern\_history** (*[device\_name(s)...]*)

Saves the pattern memory for a private device instance.

## Examples

You can use any of these utilities by calling them from VHDL code or invoking them from the debugger prompt with an *lm\_procedure* call.

Example call from VHDL code:

```
Variable ret : Natural;
...
ret := lm_log_test_vectors(":U1",1,"U1.VEC");
wait for 800 ns;
ret := lm_log_test_vectors(":U1",0,"U1.VEC");
```

Example invocation from the debugger prompt with *lm\_procedure* call:

```
> call lm_log_test_vectors(U1,1,U1.VEC)
```



---

# 11

## Using NC-VHDL with Synopsys Models

---

### Overview

This chapter explains how to use SmartModels, FlexModels, and MemPro models with NC-VHDL. The procedures are organized into the following major sections:

- [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 207](#)
- [“Using SmartModels with NC-VHDL” on page 208](#)
- [“Using FlexModels with NC-VHDL” on page 210](#)
- [“Using MemPro Models with NC-VHDL” on page 212](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models with NC-VHDL” on page 215](#)

### Setting Environment Variables

First, set the basic environment variables. If you are not using one of the model types, skip that step. In some cases the procedures that follow in this chapter include steps for setting additional environment variables.

1. Set the LMC\_HOME variable to the location of your SmartModel, FlexModel, and MemPro model installation tree, as follows:

```
% setenv LMC_HOME path_to_models_installation
```

2. Set the LM\_LICENSE\_FILE or SNPSLMD\_LICENSE\_FILE environment variable to point to the product authorization file, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LM_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

```
% setenv SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

You can put license keys for multiple products (for example, FlexModels and MemPro models) into the same authorization file. If you need to keep separate authorization files for different products, use a colon-separated list (UNIX) or semicolon-separated list (NT) to specify the search path in your variable setting.



### Caution

Do not include la\_dmon-based authorizations in the same file with snpslmd-based authorizations. If you have authorizations that use la\_dmon, keep them in a separate license file that uses a different license server (lmgrd) process than the one you use for snpslmd-based authorizations.

3. Make sure that NC-VHDL is set up properly in your environment.
4. Depending on your platform, set your load library variable to point to the platform-specific directory in \$LMC\_HOME, as shown in the following examples:

Solaris:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

Linux:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

AIX:

```
% setenv LIBPATH $LMC_HOME/lib/ibmrs.lib:$LIBPATH
```

HP-UX:

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib:$SHLIB_PATH
```

NT:

Make sure that %LMC\_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib is in the Path user variable.

## Using SmartModels with NC-VHDL

To use SmartModels with NC-VHDL, follow this procedure:

1. Add the following line to your cds.lib file to specify the logical library sm\_library for SmartModels, as shown in the following example:

```
DEFINE sm_library ./sm_library
```

2. Run the ncshell utility to generate a wrapper for the model that you want to use, as shown in the following example:

```
% ncshell -import swift into vhdl model -work sm_library
```

This step produces a wrapper file (*model.vhd*) and a component declaration (*model\_comp.vhd*) for the specified model in the sm\_library work directory.

If you want to generate wrappers for all SmartModels in your \$LMC\_HOME tree, add the `-all` switch to the `ncshell` invocation. In this case, `ncshell` creates one file (`shell.vhd`) that contains all the model wrappers and another file (`component.vhd`) that contains the component declarations.



### Hint

NC-VHDL also works with wrappers created for Leapfrog. If you want to reuse SmartModel wrappers created for Leapfrog, use `ncvhdl` to recompile the `SMLibrary.vhd` and `SMpackage.vhd` files. For more information on using SmartModels with Leapfrog, refer to [“Using SmartModels with Leapfrog” on page 199](#).

3. Add `LIBRARY` and `USE` statements to your testbench:

```
library sm_library;
use sm_library.component.all;
```

4. Instantiate SmartModels in your design using the wrapper files that you generated in Step 2. For information on required configuration parameters and instantiation examples, refer to [“Using SmartModels with SWIFT Simulators” on page 18](#).
5. Compile the other VHDL files into the work library, as shown in the following example:

```
% ncvhdl -w work testbench.vhd
```

6. Elaborate your design as shown in the following example:

```
% ncelab cfgtest
```

7. If you are using any SmartCircuit models in your design, set the `LMC_TIMEUNIT` environment variable to `-12` for 1 ps resolution, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LMC_TIMEUNIT -12
```

This sets a global timing resolution for all SmartModels in your simulation. If this variable is not set, the default timing resolution is 100 ps, which is the resolution used by most SmartModels. To see if a model is a SmartCircuit model, refer to the model datasheet. For more information on the `LMC_TIMEUNIT` environment variable, refer to the Cadence documentation for NC-VHDL.

8. Invoke the NC-VHDL simulator on your design as shown in the following example:

```
% ncsim design
```

## Using FlexModels with NC-VHDL

To use FlexModels with NC-VHDL, follow this procedures:

1. Add the following lines to your `cds.lib` file:

```
define slm_lib slm_lib_path
define work work_lib_path
```

2. Generate a VHDL wrapper file for the model by invoking `ncshell`, as shown in the following example:

```
% ncshell -import swift -into vhdl model_fx -nocompile -work slm_lib
```

3. Create a working directory and run `flexm_setup` to make copies of the model's interface and example files there, as shown in the following example:

```
% $SLMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
```

You must run `flexm_setup` every time you update your FlexModel installation with a new model version. [Table 22](#) describes the FlexModel NC-VHDL interface and example files that the `flexm_setup` tool copies.

**Table 22: FlexModel NC-VHDL Files**

| File Name                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Location                      |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>model_pkg.vhd</i>      | Model command procedure calls for HDL Command Mode.                                                                                                                                                                     | <i>workdir/src/vhdl/</i>      |
| <i>model_user_pkg.vhd</i> | Clock frequency setup and user customizations.                                                                                                                                                                          | <i>workdir/src/vhdl/</i>      |
| <i>model_fx_comp.vhd</i>  | Component definition for use with the <i>model</i> entity defined in the SWIFT wrapper file. This is put in a package named "COMPONENTS" when compiled.                                                                 | <i>workdir/examples/vhdl/</i> |
| <i>model.vhd</i>          | A bus-level wrapper around the SWIFT model. This allows you to use vectored ports for the model in your testbench. This file assumes that the "COMPONENTS" package has been installed in the logical library "slm_lib". | <i>workdir/examples/vhdl/</i> |
| <i>model_tst.vhd</i>      | A testbench that instantiates the model and shows how to use basic model commands.                                                                                                                                      | <i>workdir/examples/vhdl/</i> |

- Update the clock frequency supplied in the *model\_user\_pkg.vhd* file in your working directory to correspond to the desired clock period for the model. After you run *flexm\_setup* this file is located in:

```
workdir/src/vhdl/model_user_pkg.vhd
```

where *workdir* is your working directory.

- Create a logical library named *slm\_lib*. The default physical library mapping for this is *\$LMC\_HOME/sim/simulator/lib*; however, you can put the physical library anywhere you want.
- Add **LIBRARY** and **USE** statements to your testbench:

```
library slm_lib;
use slm_lib.flexmodel_pkg.all;
use slm_lib.model_pkg.all;
use slm_lib.model_user_pkg.all;
```

For example, you would use the following statement for the *tms320c6201\_fx* model:

```
use slm_lib.tms320c6201_pkg.all;
use slm_lib.tms320c6201_user_pkg.all;
```

- Instantiate FlexModels in your design, defining the ports and generics as required (refer to the example testbench supplied with the model). You use the supplied bus-level wrapper (*model.vhd*) in the top-level of your design to instantiate the bit-blasted wrapper generated in Step 2 (*model\_fx.vhd*) using *ncshell*.

Example using bus-level wrapper (*model.vhd*) without timing:

```
U1: model
generic map (FlexModelID => "TMS_INST1")
port map (model ports);
```

Example using bus-level wrapper (*model.vhd*) with timing:

```
U1: model
generic map (FlexModelID => "TMS_INST1",
FlexTimingMode => FLEX_TIMING_MODE_ON,
TimingVersion => "timingversion",
DelayRange => "range")
port map (model ports);
```

8. Compile the FlexModel VHDL files into logical library `slm_lib` as follows:

```
% ncvhdl -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/ncvhdl/src/slm_hdlc.vhd
% ncvhdl -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/ncvhdl/src/flexmodel_pkg.vhd
% ncvhdl -w slm_lib workdir/src/vhdl/model_user_pkg.vhd
% ncvhdl -w slm_lib workdir/src/vhdl/model_pkg.vhd
% ncvhdl -w slm_lib workdir/examples/vhdl/model_fx_comp.vhd
% ncvhdl -w slm_lib model_fx.vhd
% ncvhdl -w slm_lib workdir/examples/vhdl/model.vhd
% ncvhdl -w work testbench
```

9. Elaborate your design as shown in the following example:

```
% ncelab cfgtest
```

10. Invoke the NC-VHDL simulator as shown in the following example:

```
% ncsim design
```

## Using MemPro Models with NC-VHDL

To use MemPro models with NC-VHDL, follow this procedure:

1. If you have built your own Foreign Model Interface (FMI) shared library, perform this step.



### Attention

If you do not build your own FMI library, skip to Step 2.

NC-VHDL binds in only one shared FMI library at runtime. If your design uses FMI, you need to build a new FMI shared library that contains your library and the MemPro library. A MemPro archive library can be found at:

HP-UX

```
$LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/libfmi_ar.a
```

Solaris

```
$LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/libfmi_ar.a
```

You must create a new archive that includes the MemPro archive, library table file declaration object file, and your archive. Detailed instructions for this process can be found in the “Foreign Model Integration” chapter of the *Affirma NC VHDL Simulator C Interface User Guide*.

As shown in the following example, you must combine the contents of the MemPro library table file with your own FMI application library table:

```
#include <fmilib.h>

extern fmiModelTableT CpipeModelTable;
extern fmiModelTableT myFMITable;

fmiLibraryTableT fmiLibraryTable = {
 {"Cpipe", CpipeModelTable},
 {"myFMILib", myFMITable},
 {0, 0}
};
```

Link the MemPro archive library with the new library table object file and any other FMI application object files you wish to include, following the instructions in the *Cadence C Interface User Guide*.

The following examples show compiling the library table object files and linking MemPro libfm\_ar.a with the library table object file and the FMI application you developed, shown in the examples as new\_FMI\_table.o and your\_archive.a:

#### HP-UX

```
% /bin/cc -D_NO_PROTO -c +Z -I$CDS_VHDL/include new_FMI_table.c
% /bin/ld -b -o libfmi.sl new_FMI_table.o your_archive.a \
 $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/libfmi_ar.a
```

#### Solaris

```
% /opt/SUNWspr/bin/cc -c -KPIC -I$CDS_VHDL/include new_FMI_table.c
% /opt/SUNWspr/bin/cc -G -o libfmi.so new_FMI_table.o \
 your_archive.a $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib/libfmi_ar.a
```

2. Create a logical library named slm\_lib. The default physical library mapping for this is \$LMC\_HOME/sim/ncvhdlib. If you do not want to install the library in the LMC\_HOME tree, you can create it in any other location.

Add the following line to your cds.lib file:

```
define slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/ncvhdlib
```

3. Compile the MemPro VHDL files into logical library slm\_lib. Note that rdramd\_pkg.vhd is not required unless you are simulating RDRAM MemPro models.

```
% ncvhdl -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/ncvhdlib/src/slm_hdlc.vhd
% ncvhdl -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/ncvhdlib/src/mempro_pkg.vhd
% ncvhdl -w slm_lib $LMC_HOME/sim/ncvhdlib/src/rdramd_pkg.vhd
```

4. After generating a model using MemPro, compile the VHDL code for the model, as shown in the following example:

```
% ncvhdl mymem.vhd
```

5. If you compiled the model to a library (SLM\_MODELS in these examples), add a LIBRARY statement to your testbench:

```
LIBRARY SLM_MODELS
```

This makes models in SLM\_MODELS accessible from your design. You can refer to the model using a standard VHDL convention, such as a CONFIGURATION statement:

```
CONFIGURATION mymem_a OF mymem_tst IS
 FOR atest
 FOR ALL : mymem use CONFIGURATION SLM_MODELS.mymem_behav;
 END FOR;
END FOR;
END mymem_a;
```

6. Add LIBRARY and USE statements to your testbench:

```
LIBRARY SLM_LIB
USE SLM_LIB.mempro_pkg.all
```

This also provides access to MemPro testbench commands.

For more information on using the MemPro testbench interfaces, refer to the “[HDL Testbench Interface](#)” and “[C Testbench Interface](#)” chapters in the *MemPro User’s Manual*.

7. Instantiate MemPro models in your design. Define ports and generics as required. For information on generics used with MemPro models, refer to “[Instantiating MemPro Models](#)” on page 32. For information on message levels and message level constants, refer to “[Controlling MemPro Model Messages](#)” on page 33.
8. Compile your design as shown in the following example:

```
% ncelab -w work design_name
```

9. Invoke NC-VHDL on your design as shown in the following example:

```
% ncsim design_name
```

# Using Hardware Models with NC-VHDL

To use hardware models with NC-VHDL, follow this procedure. For the latest information on supported features, refer to the Cadence documentation.

1. Make sure NC-VHDL is set up properly and all required environment variables are set, as explained in [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 207](#).
2. Add the hardware model install tree to your path variable, as shown in the following example:

```
% set path=(/install/sms/bin/platform/ $path)
```

3. Create your own library directory for files that will be generated for the hardware model.
4. Run the ncshell command to generate .vhd wrapper files, as shown in the following example:

```
% ncshell -import lmsfi -into vhdl models/TILS299/TILS299.MDL
```

You can also use the `-all` switch to create .vhd files for multiple hardware models.

## NC-VHDL Example with TILS299 Hardware Model

The following example uses the TILS299 hardware model to show how to set up hardware models for use with NC-VHDL:

1. Create a testbench to instantiate the hardware model (for example `TB_TILS299.vhd`).
2. Run `ncvhd1` to compile your .vhd files, as shown in the following example:

```
% ncvhd1 TILS299.vhd TILS299_comp.vhd TB_TILS299.vhd
```

3. Elaborate the design, as shown in the following example:

```
% ncelab -messages work.tb_tils299:test
```

4. Invoke the NC-VHDL simulator, as shown in the following example:

```
% ncsim -gui work.tb_tils299:test
```

## NC-VHDL Utilities

The following hardware modeler simulator commands are supported in NC-VHDL:

**lm\_log\_test\_vectors** (“*instance\_name*”, **1/0**, “*filename*”);

Enables (1) or disables (0) vector logging for hardware models.

**lm\_timing\_measurements** (“*instance\_name*”, **1/0**, “*filename*”);

Enables (1) or disables (0) timing measurements for hardware models.

**lm\_enable\_timing\_checks** ([*device\_name(s)...*])

Enables timing checks for hardware models.

**lm\_disable\_timing\_checks** ([*device\_name(s)...*])

Disables timing checks for hardware models.

**lm\_unknowns** (“*option=value*”, ..., **device\_or\_pin**);

Determines how unknown values are handled by hardware models. Supported options include:

- propagate=yes/no
- value=previous/high/low
- sequence\_count=0-20
- random\_seed=0-65535
- device\_or\_pin

**lm\_loop\_instance** ([*instance\_name*]);

Makes the hardware modeler enter loop mode, where it continually replays the pattern history of the specified instance.

**lm\_pam\_shortage**(“*actions=save/sleep/finish/free/suspend/drop\_faults*”,  
“*sleep\_minutes=n*”, “*sleep\_count=n*”, “*save\_file=filename*”);

Lets you specify the action the hardware modeler is to take when it has used up most of the available pattern memory.

**lm\_pattern\_history** ([*device\_name(s)...*])

Saves the pattern memory for a private device instance.

## Examples

You can use any of these utilities by calling them from VHDL code or invoking them from the debugger prompt with an *lm\_procedure* call.

Example call from VHDL code:

```
Variable ret : Natural;
...
ret := lm_log_test_vectors(":U1",1,"U1.VEC");
wait for 800 ns;
ret := lm_log_test_vectors(":U1",0,"U1.VEC");
```

Example invocation from the debugger prompt with *lm\_procedure* call:

```
% ncsim> call lm_log_test_vectors :U0 1 299.VEC
```



---

# 12

## Using QuickSim II with Synopsys Models

---

### Overview

This chapter explains how to use SmartModels, FlexModels, and hardware models with QuickSim II. The procedures are organized into the following major sections:

- [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 219](#)
- [“Using SmartModels and FlexModels with QuickSim II” on page 221](#)
- [“Using Hardware Models with QuickSim II” on page 246](#)



#### Note

MemPro models are not supported on QuickSim II.

---

### Setting Environment Variables

First, set the basic environment variables. If you are not using one of the model types, skip that step. In some cases the procedures that follow in this chapter include steps for setting additional environment variables.

1. Set the LMC\_HOME variable to the location of your SmartModel, FlexModel, and MemPro model installation tree, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LMC_HOME path_to_models_installation
```

2. Set the LM\_LICENSE\_FILE or SNPSLMD\_LICENSE\_FILE environment variable to point to the product authorization file, as shown in the following example:

```
% setenv LM_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

```
% setenv SNPSLMD_LICENSE_FILE path_to_product_authorization_file
```

You can put license keys for multiple products (for example, SmartModels and hardware models) into the same authorization file. If you need to keep separate authorization files for different products, use a colon-separated list (UNIX) or semicolon-separated list (NT) to specify the search path in your variable setting.



### Caution

Do not include la\_dmon-based authorizations in the same file with snpslmd-based authorizations. If you have authorizations that use la\_dmon, keep them in a separate license file that uses a different license server (lmgrd) process than the one you use for snpslmd-based authorizations.

3. Set MGC\_HOME to the location of your Mentor installation and make sure QuickSim II is set up properly in your environment.

```
% setenv MGC_HOME path_to_Mentor_installation
```

4. If you are using the hardware modeler, set the LM\_DIR and LM\_LIB environment variables, as shown in the following examples:

```
% setenv LM_DIR hardware_model_install_path/sms/lm_dir
% setenv LM_LIB hardware_model_install_path/sms/models: \
hardware_model_install_path/sms/maps
```

If you put your models in a directory other than the default of /sms/models, modify the above variable setting accordingly.

5. Depending on your platform, set your load library variable to point to the platform-specific directory in \$LMC\_HOME, as shown in the following examples:

Solaris:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4Solaris.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

Linux:

```
% setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/x86_linux.lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

AIX:

```
% setenv LIBPATH $LMC_HOME/lib/ibmrs.lib:$LIBPATH
```

HP-UX:

```
% setenv SHLIB_PATH $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib:$SHLIB_PATH
```

NT:

Make sure that %LMC\_HOME%\lib\pcnt.lib is in the Path user variable.

# Using SmartModels and FlexModels with QuickSim II

This section explains how to use SmartModels and FlexModels with QuickSim II. To use FlexModels with QuickSim II, you use Direct C Control. For information on Direct C Control, refer to [“Using FlexModels with SWIFT Simulators” on page 24](#). The rest of this section explains required installation steps and how to use model symbols in the schematic capture front-end to the simulator. This information is organized in the following major subsections:

## Installing the QuickSim II SWIFT Interface

Synopsys ships the part of QuickSim II that communicates with the SWIFT interface for versions of QuickSim II prior to the D.1 release. If you are using a version of QuickSim II prior to D.1, you must install the Mentor Graphics application software for each Mentor Graphics user tree.



---

### Attention

Beginning with version D.1 of QuickSim II, Mentor Graphics assumed responsibility for their integration of the SWIFT interface. If you are using version D.1 or higher, refer to the Mentor Graphics documentation for information about using SWIFT.

---

Every time you install or update Mentor Graphics application software, you must create a user tree for the SWIFT SmartModel Library. Use the MGC install tool to create duplicate Mentor Graphics user trees. User trees typically require between 10–20 MB of disk space. For questions about creating Mentor Graphics user trees, refer to the Mentor Graphics documentation. Follow these steps:

1. If you are using a version of QuickSim II prior to D1, for each Mentor Graphics home directory (user or master tree) that requires access to the SWIFT interface, execute the following command:

UNIX

```
% $LMC_HOME/bin/mgc_ins -m $MGC_HOME -l $LMC_HOME
```

NT

You will be running a mkns shell in the MGC environment; for more information on the mkns shell, refer to Mentor Graphics QuickSim II documentation.

In the Control Panel, set the following drives to the appropriate system environment variables:

```
DRIVE:/port LMC_HOME
DRIVE:/port MGC_HOME
```

2. Add “\$LMC\_HOME” followed by a blank line to your location map file.
3. Add SmartModel Library Menus to Design Architect. Normally, as part of installation, the Admin tool automatically adds SmartModel menus to Design Architect for the models you installed. Use the instructions in this section to add the SmartModel menus only if, after installation, you do not find SmartModel menu entries under the Design Architect “Libraries” pull-down menu. To include SmartModel menu selections in the Design Architect (DA) menus, follow these steps:

- a. Set the AMPLE\_PATH environment variable. If this variable already exists, use one of these commands as appropriate:

UNIX

```
% setenv AMPLE_PATH ${AMPLE_PATH}:$LMC_HOME/special/qsim/menus
```

If you have a custom userware directory, you can create links that point to “\$LMC\_HOME/special/qsim/menus/des\_arch.”

NT

```
DRIVE:/path_to_menus/
```

- b. If the AMPLE\_PATH environment variable does not exist, use one of these commands as appropriate:

UNIX

```
% setenv AMPLE_PATH $LMC_HOME/special/qsim/menus
```

If you have a custom userware directory, you can create links that point to “\$LMC\_HOME/special/qsim/menus/des\_arch.”

NT

```
DRIVE:/path_to_menus/
```

4. Generate the menus as shown in the appropriate example:

UNIX

```
% $LMC_HOME/bin/mgc_menu.pl
```

NT

```
> LMC_HOME%\bin\mgc_menu.cmd
```

Menu entries are created for the models that you have installed. If menu entries are missing for models you believe you have in your library, use the Admin tool to verify your installed models. If you change your model installation, rerun `mgc_menu` to update the menu to reflect the new model list.

After successful menu activation, the “Libraries” pull-down menu of the Schematic Editor contains an entry for “Logic Modeling SmartModel Library.” If you have SimuBus models installed, the pull-down menu also contains an entry for “Logic Modeling SimuBus Products.”

## Using SmartModels/FlexModels with QuickSim II

This chapter provides information about using SmartModels (including FlexModels) with Mentor Graphics (MGC) tools. This information is organized in the following major sections:

- [Schematic Capture](#)
- [Logic Simulation](#)
- [Custom Symbols](#)

## Schematic Capture

Adding a SmartModel Library model to a design schematic involves identifying the desired symbol, instantiating it, and then editing its properties as necessary. Synopsys supplies a complete Schematic Editor menu system in the QuickSim II environment that you can use to identify and instantiate a component. You can also instantiate symbols from the command line and edit property values interactively using Design Architect. This chapter provides information about both approaches to building a design, following an introductory discussion of the symbols and their properties.

For more information about Design Architect and the Schematic Editor, refer to the Mentor Graphics documentation.

## Symbols

Synopsys provides symbols representing default package pinouts for each SmartModel. Some models have more than one symbol associated with them. This is true for:

- Models of simple logic gates, which are supplied with DeMorgan equivalent negative logic symbols in addition to standard symbols
- Models that offer both pin and bus symbols

For information about symbol compatibility with different versions of the Design Architect software, refer to the [SmartModel Library Release Notes](#).

## Pin and Bus Symbols

For many high pin-count parts, you get pin and bus symbols. Bus symbols may be more convenient to use than their pin equivalents, because they take up less real estate on the schematic and are easier to connect and to read. Figure 13 illustrates the differences between pin and bus symbols.

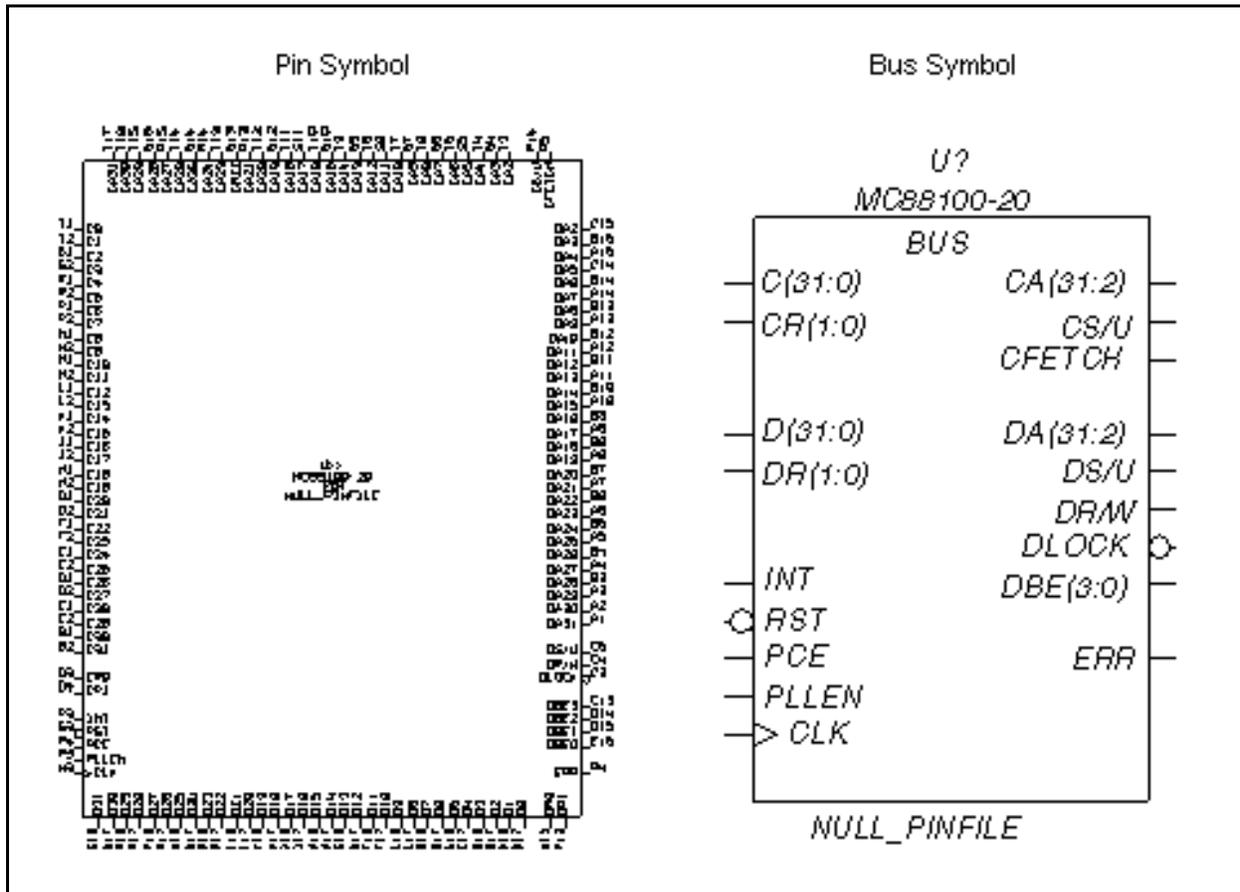


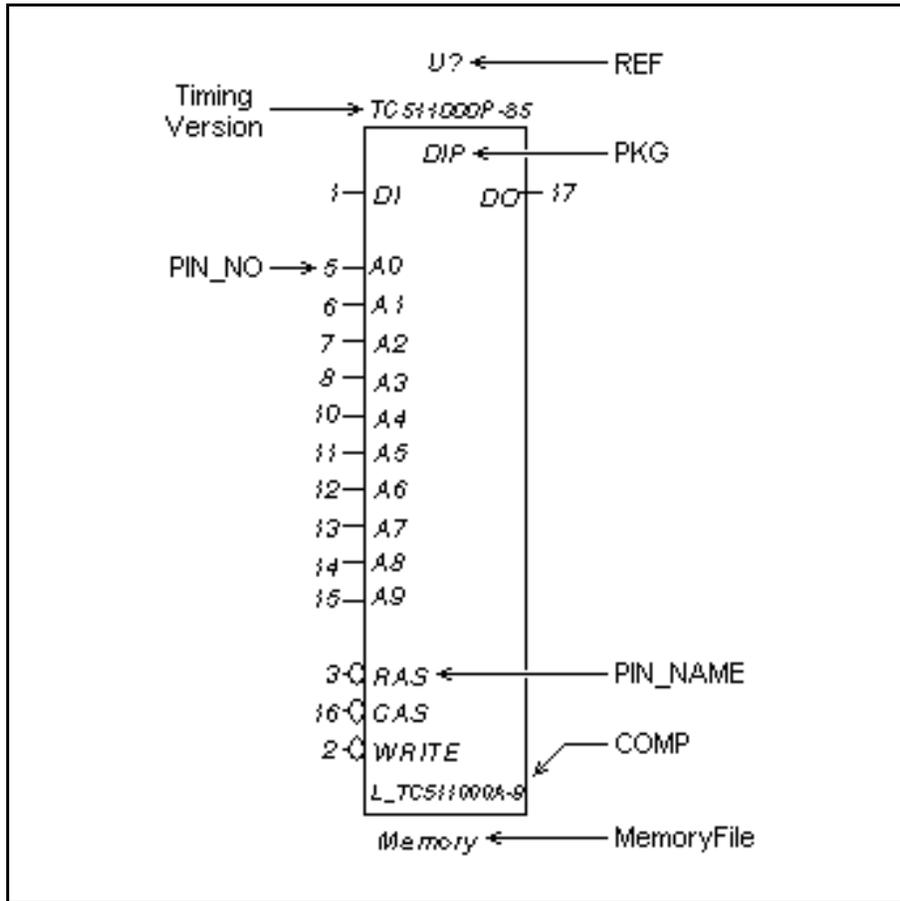
Figure 13: Sample Pin and Bus Symbols

## Symbol Properties

Assigning specific values to symbol properties completes the definition of a SmartModel. The properties used on the symbols provided for the Mentor Graphics Design Architect environment include:

- Symbol properties used by SWIFT interface models
- Symbol properties required for simulation
- Optional symbol properties

You can edit symbol property values either with the Schematic Editor pop-up menu or by using the QuickSim II CHANGE TEXT VALUE command. These properties are hidden or visible depending on the visibility attributes selected by your library manager. [Figure 14](#) illustrates the positions of the visible properties on a symbol supplied by Synopsys.



**Figure 14: Visible Symbol Properties**

**Symbol Properties used by SWIFT Models**

[Table 23](#) lists symbol properties that are used by SWIFT interface models.

**Table 23: Symbol Properties used by SWIFT Models**

| Property      | Description                                                                                                                         |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TimingVersion | Timing version to use with a model. Any value assigned to the TimingVersion property must be a valid timing version for that model. |
| MemoryFile    | Name and path of a memory image file.                                                                                               |

**Table 23: Symbol Properties used by SWIFT Models (Continued)**

| Property  | Description                                           |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| PCLFile   | Name and path of a compiled PCL file.                 |
| JEDECFile | Name and path of a JEDEC fuse map file.               |
| SCFFile   | Name and path of an MCF file for SmartCircuit models. |

**Note**

FlexModels use a slightly different set of symbol properties. For information on the required configuration properties for FlexModels, refer to [“Using FlexModels with SWIFT Simulators”](#) on page 24.

You can use either an absolute or relative path name to point to a file. If you use a relative path name it is resolved relative to the value of \$MGC\_WD.

**Symbol Properties Required for Simulation**

[Table 24](#) lists symbol properties that are required for simulation.

**Table 24: Symbol Properties Required for Simulation**

| Property       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MODEL          | The MODEL property contains a label registered as type “SWIFT”.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| PIN            | Logic simulation requires that each pin on a symbol have a property. A PIN property has two values associated with it: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● User pin name</li> <li>● Compiled pin name</li> </ul> <p>You can change the user pin name to adhere to drafting standards, but you must not change the compiled pin name.</p> |
| PINTYPE        | Each model pin has an associated PINTYPE property, which describes the pin entry point type (i.e., IN, OUT, IXO, or IO). QuickSim II requires this property.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| SWIFT_TEMPLATE | The SWIFT_TEMPLATE property always has a value that specifies the model name. This property cannot be changed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

**Table 24: Symbol Properties Required for Simulation (Continued)**

| Property | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PKG      | Each model has a PKG property equal to the physical package type (for example, DIP, LCC) that the symbol's pin numbers match. When using the bus symbol for a component, the PKG property is set to the value "BUS". |

## Optional Symbol Properties

Table 25 lists optional symbol properties.

**Table 25: Optional Symbol Properties**

| Property | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| COMP     | The COMP property provides an interface to layout or other applications. Synopsys does not use this property.<br>The COMP property is assigned the default value "TimingVersion" with the property attribute "expression". This causes the COMP property to track the value of the TimingVersion property for Synopsys symbols. |
| PIN_NAME | The PIN_NAME property is the visible text on a symbol representing a pin's name. Changing this text has no effect on the model's operation.                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| PIN_NO   | The PIN_NO property value matches the physical pin number of the component for the default package. Changing the value of this property has no effect on the model's operation.                                                                                                                                                 |
| REF      | The REF (reference) property provides an identifier for use in Advanced Verification messages. Changing the value of this property has no effect on the model's operation.                                                                                                                                                      |

## Building a Design Using the Menus

The Synopsys entries in the Design Architect menu system can be useful when building a design for the first time because all of the alternatives at each menu level are apparent.

To add SmartModels to a design using the menus, follow these steps:

1. Identify the desired model using the Schematic Editor menu system to traverse the menus.

2. Instantiate the model's symbol on the schematic sheet.
3. Edit property values as necessary using Design Architect or the Schematic Editor.

## The Menu System

The menu system consists of several levels, starting with the pull-down menu that is accessed with the Libraries choice from the Design Architect menu bar. At that point, the following menu choices are available:

- Logic Modeling SmartModel Library
- Logic Modeling SimuBus Products (this entry is present only if you have installed SimuBus models)



---

### Note

Normally, the Admin tool installs the Logic Modeling entries in the Design Architect Libraries menu automatically, as part of model installation. If, after installing your models, you do not find at least the Logic Modeling SmartModel Library entry, you can perform the menu installation yourself. For more information, refer to [“Installing the QuickSim II SWIFT Interface” on page 221](#).

---

Following are descriptions of the relevant menu levels:

### Top-level

The top-level menu offers a number of choices, including component libraries and the first SmartModel product menu.

### Function

The first SmartModel product menu offers a choice of functions, as follows:

- General purpose logic menu
- Logic block menu
- Memories menu
- Processor menu
- Programmable logic menu
- Support peripheral menu

### Subfunction

Each item on the function menu has its own subfunction menu, which is used to further specify the symbol for the model being instantiated.

**Vendor**

Each subfunction menu selection has an associated vendor menu, which displays a list of part manufacturers for that subfunctional group of models.

**Part**

Each vendor menu selection has an associated part menu, which displays a list of all SmartModels for the selected subfunction class and vendor.

**Component**

Each part menu selection has an associated component menu, which displays a list of all the timing and/or symbol versions available for a particular model.

**Example**

The following sequence of menu selections activates a Motorola MC88100:

```
SmartModel Library > Processor > Microprocessor > Motorola >
88100 > MC88100-20 (BUS)
```

Choosing the function, subfunction, and vendor brings up the part menu, which shows all the Motorola microprocessor models. Choosing the MC88100 brings up the component menu, which shows both the component and the symbol.

**Building a Design Without the Menus**

Users who are familiar with the SmartModel Library may prefer to use Schematic Editor commands to build designs. This approach can be faster than using the menu system. The basic steps are the same:

1. Identify the model you need.
2. Instantiate the model's symbol on the schematic sheet.
3. Use Design Architect or the Schematic Editor to edit property values, as necessary.

**Creating An Instance**

Use the `$add_instance` command to instantiate a part in the Schematic Editor, as shown in the following minimal command:

```
% $add_instance (" $LMC_HOME/special/qsim/symbols/")
```

The symbol name and TimingVersion property value can also be included on the same line, as follows. (All punctuation marks are required.)

```
% $add_instance \
("$LMC_HOME/special/qsim/symbols/" , "" , , , ["TimingVersion" , ""])
```

If the `TimingVersion` property value is not specified, the default timing version is activated. If a symbol is not specified when applicable, the default is used. The defaults are “positive” for logic version, and “pin” for symbol type.

### Selecting Alternate Symbols

When there are DeMorgan equivalent symbols, the positive version is the default. Specify “NEG” as the symbol name to get the negative logic symbol (if desired), as follows:

```
% $add_instance ("$_LMC_HOME/special/qsim/symbols/tt100","NEG",,, \
["TimingVersion","SN74AS00"])
```

When activating parts manually, remember that the pin symbol is the default when both pin and bus symbols are available. Specify the bus symbol (if desired), as follows:

```
% $add_instance ("$_LMC_HOME/special/qsim/symbols/mc68030_hv","BUS",,, \
["TimingVersion","MC68030-33"])
```

Use the Mentor Graphics Design Viewpoint Editor (DVE) to set the primitive type for SWIFT in DVE. To ensure that SWIFT instances are evaluated as primitives, you can add to the primitive rule using the add primitive command within DVE. In the following example, the add primitive command causes all instances of the MODEL property value “SWIFT” to be evaluated as primitives by QuickSim II.

```
% add_primitive "model" -noexcept -string "SWIFT"
```

The string “SWIFT” can be substituted with any other labels that you have registered with the model type of “swift”.

## Logic Simulation

The following sections in this chapter provide information about using SmartModels for logic simulation in the Mentor Graphics’s QuickSim II environment. For related information, refer to the following Mentor Graphics manuals:

- *Common Simulation User's and Reference Manual*
- *Getting Started with QuickSim II Training Workbook*
- *QuickSim II User's Manual*

## Current Support Levels

Please note the following important items before starting a simulation. SmartModel Library models currently:

- **Do** support the implementation of location maps. You can use location maps to install a library anywhere on the system. Set an environment variable and a location map variable before using location maps.
- **Do** support extended-time (64-bit) simulations.
- **Do not** support the unit delay timing mode.

## Default Timing Mode

The default timing mode for SWIFT SmartModels is “typ”. You can use the timing-mode switch at QuickSim invocation time to force the timing mode to be “min”, “typ”, or “max”.

## Signal Levels and Drive Strengths

SmartModels recognize the nine signal levels and drive strengths listed in [Table 26](#). QuickSim II maps indeterminate strengths to unknowns for “12-state” simulations.

The models generate strong and resistive states. The high-impedance unknown state (XZ) is used when a model places an output in the high-impedance state.

**Table 26: Signal State Values**

|                    | Signal Level |           |             |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------|-------------|
| Drive Strength     | Low (0)      | High (1)  | Unknown (x) |
| Strong (S)         | <b>0S</b>    | <b>1S</b> | <b>XS</b>   |
| Resistive (R)      | <b>0R</b>    | <b>1R</b> | <b>XR</b>   |
| High Impedance (Z) | 0Z           | 1Z        | <b>XZ</b>   |

The state values shown in bold type are generated by the models. All values are recognized.

## QuickSim II Command Line Switches

When QuickSim II is invoked from the command line, the following switches are the only ones recognized by SmartModels.

### Timing Mode Switch

Use the `-timing_mode` switch to set the global timing mode to minimum, maximum, or typical. Unit delay timing mode is not currently supported. Use the following syntax when setting this switch:

```
-timing_mode { min | max | typ }
```



#### Note

---

SmartCircuit models override settings made with the timing mode switch by means of the model command file (MCF) when the MCF is configured with a particular timing mode. For more information about configuring SmartCircuit models of FPGA and CPLD devices, refer to the [SmartModel Library User's Manual](#).

---

### Time Scale Switch

Use the `-time_scale` switch to adjust time values (delays and checks) to the desired resolution by specifying the time scale in nanoseconds (ns). The default is 0.1 ns. Use the following syntax when setting this switch:

```
-time_scale timescale
```

### Constraint Mode Switch

Use the `-constraint_mode` switch to enable or disable timing constraint checking. The default is “off”. Any value other than “off” causes a model to perform constraint checking. Use the following syntax when setting this switch:

```
-constraint_mode { off | state_only | messages }
```

## QuickSim II Command Interaction

There are many QuickSim II simulator commands that interact with SmartModels in a design. [Table 27](#) lists some of the QuickSim II commands that affect SmartModels.

**Table 27: QuickSim II Command Interaction**

| QuickSim II Command | Effect on SmartModels                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| INITIALIZE          | Causes a model to reevaluate until the simulation reaches DC stability. It will not reset the model or set internal values to the “state_value” specified.                                                    |
| SIGNAL INSTANCE     | Reports the status of selected instances with the “swift_dump” parameter.                                                                                                                                     |
| REPORT OBJECT       | Not supported by SmartModels. Use the SIGNAL INSTANCE command to query a model and report its status.                                                                                                         |
| REREAD MODELFILE    | Reloads any of the configuration files used by a model, including memory image, JEDEC, MCF, SCF, and PCL command files. Configuration files are only re-read if the simulation has changed the configuration. |
| RESET STATE         | Causes all models to reinitialize their states to the original time zero (power-up) conditions.                                                                                                               |
| RESTORE STATE       | Restores all of the model's internal states as part of the operation.                                                                                                                                         |
| SAVE STATE          | Records all of the model's internal states as part of the operation.                                                                                                                                          |
| WRITE MODELFILE     | Causes a model to “dump” its memory image to a file.                                                                                                                                                          |

## SWIFT Command Channel

You can use the SWIFT command channel to pass commands directly through to SmartModels. Use the QuickSim II SIGNAL INSTANCE command to access the command channel.

To issue a command for selected instances, use the following:

```
signal instance swift_model -p "command_name [arguments]"
```



## Editing Properties

Adding or changing the value of a JEDECFile, SCFFile, PCLFile, or MemoryFile property causes the simulator to read the file and initialize the model to the power-up state. Select the following menu choices to change a property:

**Edit > Properties > Add, Edit > Properties > Change, and Edit > Properties**

## Changing Timing Modes

SmartModels support minimum, typical, and maximum timing modes. Unit-delay mode is not supported. Select the following menu choices to display the form for changing the timing mode of specific model instances:

**Setup > Kernel > Change > Timing Mode**

You can also use instance names to specify which instance to change.

## Constraint Checking

Select the following menu choices to enable/disable the various timing constraint checks (for example, setup, hold):

**Setup > Kernel > Constraint Mode > Change**

To enable constraint checking, select either “State Only” or “Messages” on the Change Constraint Mode form. To disable constraint checking, select “Off” on the Change Constraint Mode form.

## SmartModel Library Message Formats

SmartModels issue four different kinds of messages to provide relevant information to users during simulations. These include:

- Error messages
- Warning messages
- Trace messages
- Notes

Error messages can be generated by timing or usage checks. Warning messages, error messages, and notes can all be generated by usage checks, depending on the situation. Hardware verification models also issue trace messages, if enabled.

Error messages itemize selected information. For example, a setup time violation causes an error message that documents:

- Pin name
- Part (by instance), reference designator, and component name

- Sheet name
- Design name
- Simulation time
- Signals and edges, as appropriate
- Setup times (as they occurred and as required by vendor data sheet)

Here are some sample messages:

```

\I$2751': ` `
\I$2751': `? Error: Unknown signal level on CLK pin.'
\I$2751': `? This will probably cause problems later in the
 simulation.'
\I$2751': `? SmartModel Instance /I$2751(U102:MC68030-20), sheet1 of
 schematic at time 0.0'
\I$2790': ` `
\I$2790': `Note: Loading the memory image file "/user/bobb/design/
 schematic/rom_image.0_7"'
\I$2790': `SmartModel Instance /I$2790(U201:I27512), sheet2 of
 schematic at time 0.0'
\I$2790': ` --- 14 values have been initialized.'
\I$2751': ` `
\I$2751': `! Warning: Unknown signal level on DSACK0_PIN.
 Assuming DSACK0_PIN is 1.'
\I$2751': `! SmartModel Instance /I$2751(U102:MC68030-20), sheet1 of
 schematic at time 200.0'
\I$2751': `Trace: Returning read data to PCL program:'
\I$2751': ` [0]=00000BFE, [1]=00000000, [2]=00000000, [3]=00000000'
\I$2751': ` [4]=00000000, [5]=00000000, [6]=00000000, [7]=00000000,
 [8]=00000000'
\I$2751': ` SmartModel Instance /I$2751(U102:MC68030-20), sheet1 of
 schematic at time 1750.0'
\I$2751': ` `
\I$2751': `Trace: PCL Bus Cmd: Read. Control=06, Addr=00000004,
 Bytes=4.'
\I$2751': ` SmartModel Instance /I$2751(U102:MC68030-20), sheet1 of
 schematic at time 1750.0'

```

## Using SmartModel Windows with QuickSim II

SmartModel Windows is a SmartModel Library feature that can be used for more efficient system-level verification and debugging by allowing you to view window elements during simulation runs for microprocessor, PLD, memory, and peripheral models.

Window elements that can be viewed include registers, pointers, states, or latches (for example), depending on the part being modeled. This section provides information about how to interact with SmartModel Windows using QuickSim II. SmartModel Windows can be used to:

- Review window element values and set breakpoints
- Single-step through simulations
- Change window element values before proceeding with a simulation
- Trace instruction execution
- Rename instances
- Combine register elements

Most SmartModels contain predefined window elements that correspond to the manufacturer's specifications. In addition, SmartCircuit models allow users to define their own window elements so that the actual structure of the device can be examined. To determine if a specific model is equipped with SmartModel Windows, check the model's online datasheet.

### How SmartModel Windows Works

SmartModel Windows couples the models and the simulator so that model elements can be used almost as if they were nets in the design. Normal QuickSim II commands are used with SmartModel Windows, except that an instance designator must be added to a QuickSim II command to address a model's window elements (even at the top level). The general format for using QuickSim II commands with SmartModel Windows is:

```
command model_instance/element_name
```

Use any of the following commands to enable window elements with the simulator:

```
ADD LISTS model_instance/element_name
```

```
ADD MONITORS model_instance/element_name
```

```
ADD TRACES model_instance/element_name
```

Window elements must be activated with one of the preceding commands in order for SmartModel Windows to begin displaying data. Each model's online datasheet lists its predefined window elements, which are available during simulation. Using windows you can read or display elements, force new values onto them, and stop the simulation based on their values.

## Tracing Instruction Execution

SmartModel Windows provides the ability to trace peripheral component activity in a design. Most larger peripherals and microprocessors equipped for SmartModel Windows have a 1-bit element named `TRACE_ENABLE`. Setting `TRACE_ENABLE` to one (1) causes trace messages to display in the transcript window.

Use the following command to enable instruction tracing for a model:

```
FORCE model_instance/TRACE_ENABLE 1
```

Some trace message examples follow:

```
'I$2752': `Trace: Logical Master writing to PMMU Operand Address CIR.
'I$2752': `SmartModel Instance /I$2752(U103:MC68851-12), sheet1 of
 my_design at time 819500.0
'I$2752': `Trace: MC68851 is starting a table search using CRP.
'I$2752': `SmartModel Instance /I$2752(U103:MC68851-12), sheet1 of
 my_design at time 822150.0
```

## Setting Breakpoints and Word Triggering

Use the `ADD BREAKPOINT` command to stop the simulation at critical points and examine internal window elements. You can set breakpoints based on the contents of specific elements inside components within the design. For example, the following command causes the simulation to stop at the breakpoint when the specified condition is met.

```
ADD BREAKPOINT (model_instance/TC==0B)
```

You can use Boolean expressions with the Add Breakpoint command to set up complex word triggers that provide a logic analyzer during simulation. For example, the following command causes the simulation to stop at the breakpoint when both of the two specified conditions are met.

```
ADD BREAKPOINT ((model_instance/SCC!=0)&&(model_instance/TC==B))
```

Trigger terms do not have to refer to the same instance or model. In addition, net values and window element contents can be combined to make trigger terms.

## Single-Step Simulation

The `ADD BREAKPOINT` command defaults to stopping the simulator when a signal or expression in a window element changes state. As a result, you can use the `ADD BREAKPOINT` command to single-step through a simulation.

### Renaming Instances

Use the ADD SYNONYM command to rename instances with easier-to-remember substitute names. For example, to rename a model for an MC68851 with an instance name of “I\$289” to an easier-to-remember name such as “PMMU,” use the following command:

```
ADD SYNONYM 'PMMU' I$289
```

Once you add a synonym you can use it in place of the original instance name in commands. For example, the following command lists the MC68851 translation control register.

```
ADD LISTS HEX PMMU/TC
```

### Combining Register Elements

You can use the ADD BUS command to combine meaningful 1-bit elements of a PLD into a single bus that can be viewed or changed after the PLD has been programmed. This saves effort compared to dealing with each 1-bit element one at a time. [Table 28](#) shows the elements of a sample device, the Texas Instruments TIBPAL22V10. All window elements for this example are 1-bit wide with read and write access.

**Table 28: Elements in a TIBPAL22V10 Device**

| Element | Description                               |
|---------|-------------------------------------------|
| Q23     | PAL Internal Register connected to pin 23 |
| Q22     | PAL Internal Register connected to pin 22 |
| Q21     | PAL Internal Register connected to pin 21 |
| Q20     | PAL Internal Register connected to pin 20 |
| Q19     | PAL Internal Register connected to pin 19 |
| Q18     | PAL Internal Register connected to pin 18 |
| Q17     | PAL Internal Register connected to pin 17 |
| Q16     | PAL Internal Register connected to pin 16 |
| Q15     | PAL Internal Register connected to pin 15 |
| Q14     | PAL Internal Register connected to pin 14 |

**Note**

Because the block diagram of this part does not denote specific names for the elements, their names reflect the output pin numbers on the DIP symbol (for example, pin 23 maps to Q23).

For example, to program the first six elements listed in [Table 28](#) as counters and register the last four elements as data pins from an I/O port, you would use the following commands:

```
ADD BUS CNTR I$230/Q23, I$230/Q22, I$230/Q21, I$230/Q20, I$230/Q19,
 I$230/Q18
ADD BUS DATA I$230/Q17, I$230/Q16, I$230/Q15, I$230/Q14
ADD LISTS CNTR DATA -C -HEX
```

### Changing Program Flow by Setting Values

You can use the SmartModel Windows feature to shorten large repetitive loops. For example, if a DMA controller has initiated a DMA transfer of 1,024 words to main memory, you can view the transfer of the first couple of words before stopping the simulation. By artificially setting the value of the DMA's transfer control register, you can control which part of the transfer to view. You can then view the last few words as they are transferred without having to wait for the entire process.

Be careful when inserting values into window elements, especially when forcing data into program counters and instruction registers. This SmartModel Windows feature is recommended only for users who completely understand the implications of what is being inserted into an element.

When forcing a value onto an element, the FORCE command is always interpreted as if the -CHARGED switch were present. This means that the forced value vanishes when another event attempts to update the window element. It is not possible to FIX or WIRE a forced value on a window element.

### SmartModel Window Elements

SmartModel Window elements for SmartCircuit models can be defined only at simulator startup. This affects the way several QuickSim II commands interact with SmartCircuit models:

- The SAVE STATE and RESTORE STATE commands produce unpredictable effects if any SmartCircuit window elements are defined after saving the state.
- For SmartModel Windows to work with the SAVE STATE and RESTORE STATE commands, the window elements defined at SAVE STATE must exactly match those defined at the start of the current simulation session.

- The REREAD MODELFILE command does not redefine window elements for SmartCircuit models. Using this command to redefine window elements after simulation startup disables the window elements.

## Custom Symbols

Synopsys provides symbols representing default package pinouts for SmartModels. However, you may need to create custom symbols for some of the following reasons:

- To conform to internal drafting requirements
- To make a symbol match a component's pinout
- To match external drafting specifications (for example, military specifications)

Users who choose to create custom symbols as an alternative to using the symbols provided can:

- **Modify a SmartModel Symbol.** Start with the SmartModel symbol and modify it to match your drafting requirements. The value of the user PIN property can now be changed without corrupting the value of the compiled PIN property.
- **Create a New Symbol.** Create the symbol with your pin values, figure out the corresponding pin names used by the model, and change the user pin values to those names.

To create custom symbols, follow these steps:

1. Provide required SWIFT properties on the symbol.
2. Register the component.
3. Map pin names to standard SWIFT pin names.

## SWIFT Properties

The following symbol properties are required to interface with a SWIFT model:

- model
- TimingVersion
- pin
- pintype
- swift\_template

Refer to [Table 23](#) and [Table 24](#) for information about other required symbol properties.

## Component Registration

When creating new symbols, you must add the SWIFT model to the component interface by “registering” the model with a type of “SWIFT”.

For example, suppose you have created a new component called “my\_ttl00” and you want to use the SmartModel Library “ttl00” binary as the simulation model. You would register the ttl00 model as follows:

```
reg_model $MY_DIR/my_comp_lib/my_ttl00 -type SWIFT -label 'my_label'
```

## PIN\_NAME Mapping

The two methods for creating custom symbols described in [“Custom Symbols” on page 241](#) cannot be used to map bus symbol pins to model pins. You must use a pin\_map file to accomplish this sort of custom symbol creation, as explained in the following sections.

### PIN Property

A PIN property can have two distinct values in Design Architect, as follows:

- Compiled pin value
- User pin value

The compiled pin value must be the same value that is used in the model. When initially adding a pin to a symbol, both these values are set to the specified value. For example, naming a pin “A” causes both its user pin value and the compiled pin value to be “A”.

Changing a PIN property value causes the compiled pin value to track the user pin value. Specifically changing the compiled PIN property value disables this tracking mechanism. To re-enable tracking, set the value of the compiled PIN property to null (“”).

### PIN\_NAME Property

SmartModel Library symbols include a property called PIN\_NAME that is used purely for graphical purposes. The PIN\_NAME property is provided because SmartModel Library symbols do not completely match the Mentor Graphics requirements for pin names. Deleting a PIN\_NAME property does not affect model functionality in any way.



---

**Attention**

Do not confuse the PIN property with the PIN\_NAME property on SmartModel symbols.

---

## Purpose of the pin\_map File

Use the pin\_map file to map custom symbol pins to model pins. If your symbol does not have buses, then you can use the “user pin value” and “compiled pin value” combinations previously described to do this mapping without using the pin\_map file. If you have bus pins on your symbol, then you need to use a pin\_map file and ensure that the PKG symbol property is set to the value “BUS”. Following is a general description of the pin\_map file which describes both cases.



### Note

Error messages cite the pin names used by the model, not those on the symbol or in the pin\_map file.

## How the pin\_map File Works

At startup, a PKG symbol value of “BUS” triggers the simulator to look for a pin\_map file for that model. The pin\_map cross-reference file is a free-format ASCII file. It contains statements that use the following syntax:

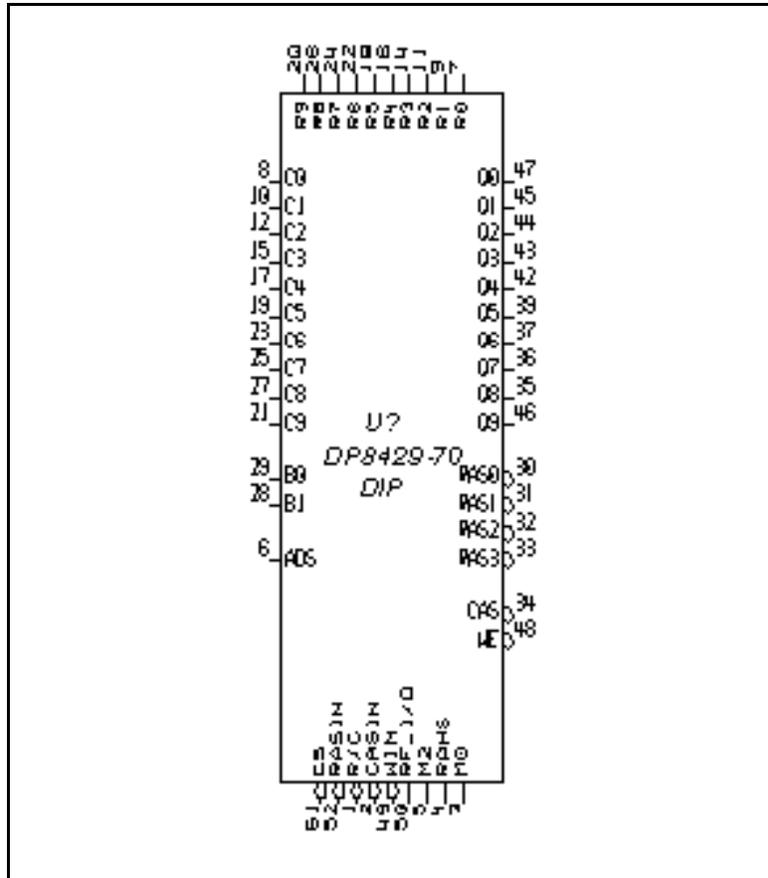
```
pin_type symbol_pin [=] model_pin_names ; [# comment_text]
```

Following are descriptions of the fields and options.

|                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>pin_type</i>        | Must be the same value as the PINTYPE property of the model. Valid values are IN, OUT, IXO, and IO. Do not change this value.                                                                                                     |
| <i>symbol_pin</i>      | The new pin name you want to use on your symbol. This is the symbol's user PIN property, not its PIN_NAME property.                                                                                                               |
| =                      | Optional.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <i>model_pin_names</i> | A statement can have from 0 to 767 model_pin_names, separated by spaces, tabs, or new lines. The model_pin_names are ordered from most significant to least significant and refer to the PIN property, not the PIN_NAME property. |
| ;                      | Ends a statement.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| #                      | Starts a comment, which runs to the end of the line.                                                                                                                                                                              |

### Example of a pin\_map File

The following example pin\_map file customizes the standard symbol supplied with the model of the National Semiconductor DP8429 DRAM controller shown in [Figure 15](#).



**Figure 15: National Semiconductor DP8429 DRAM Controller**

In the example pin\_map file shown below, the names that are changed on the first symbol are labeled CS, RASIN, R/C, CASIN, WIN, RA, RB, RC, RD, and M2. They will have an “L” added to the name to denote that they are asserted low. Notice that a bus has been defined for each of these sets of pins: Q0 through Q9, R0 through R9, C0 through C9, and B0 through B1.

```
#
DP8429 PIN NAME CHANGES
#
IN CSL = CS ;
IN RASINL = RASIN ;
IN CASINL = CASIN ;
IN RCL = R/C ;
IN WINL = WIN ;
IN RFSH = M2 ;
IN R = R9 R8 R7 R6 R5 R4 R3 R2 R1 R0;
```

```

IN C = C9 C8 C7 C6 C5 C4 C3 C2 C1 C0;
IN B = B1 B0;
OUT WEL = WE ;
OUT RAL = RAS3 ;
OUT RBL = RAS2 ;
OUT RCL = RAS1 ;
OUT RDL = RAS0 ;
OUT Q = Q9 Q8 Q7 Q6 Q5 Q4 Q3 Q2 Q1 Q0;

```

## Conditional Pin Mapping

Use a conditional clause in the `pin_map` file to cause the model to use different parts of a `pin_map` file based on the value of a certain property. The syntax is:

```
% property_name property_value
```

This method is used by the models to map the pins from the BUS symbols to the model.

The pin map parser searches for the `property_name` in the design database and then compares the `property_value`. If the property is not present, or if the actual value of the property does not match the `property_value` exactly, everything in the file until the next percent sign (%) is ignored.

The following example shows the `pin_map` file that provides mapping from the pin to the bus symbols for the Logic Devices LSH32 32-bit barrel shifter.

```

#
Bus Package for the LSH32
#
% PKG BUS
IN I = I31 I30 I29 I28 I27 I26 I25 I24 I23 I22 I21 I20 I19 I18
 I17 I16 I15 I14 I13 I12 I11 I10 I9 I8 I7 I6 I5 I4 I3 I2 I1 ;
OUT Y = Y15 Y14 Y13 Y12 Y11 Y10 Y9 Y8 Y7 Y6 Y5 Y4 Y3 Y2 Y1 Y0 ;
IN SI = SI4 SI3 SI2 SI1 SI0 ;
OUT SO = SO4 SO3 SO2 SO1 SO0

```

Figure 16 illustrates both symbol types.

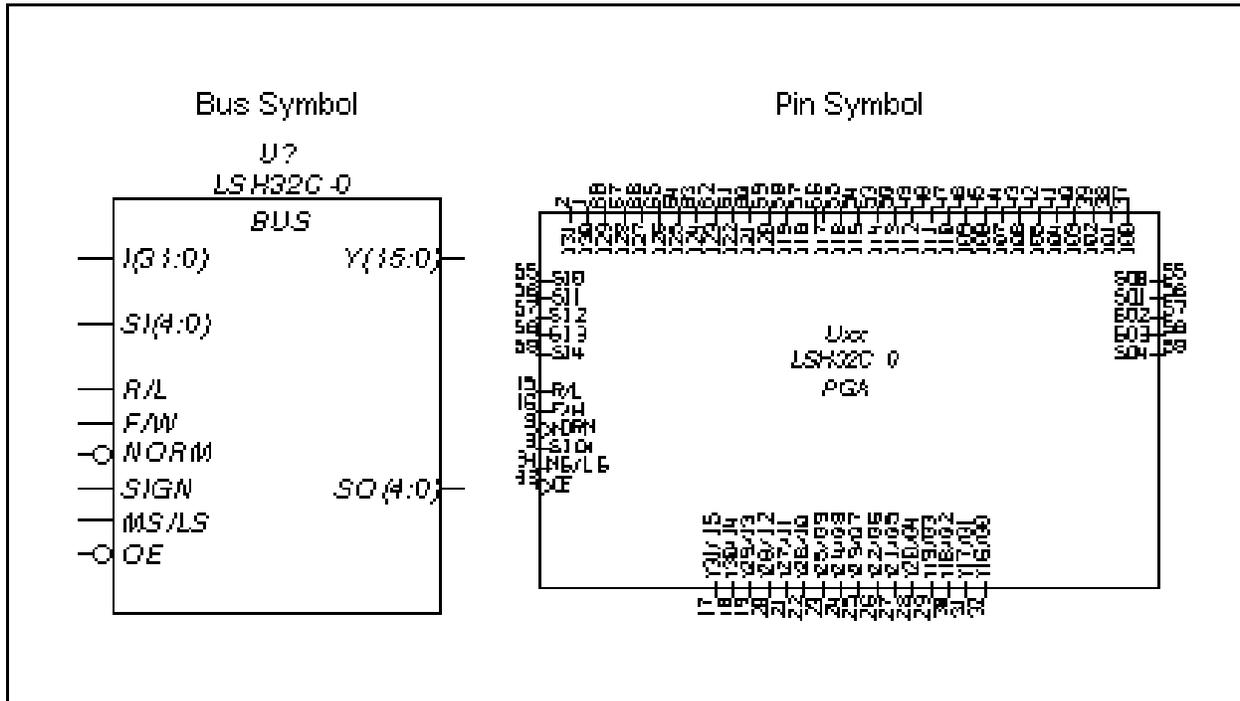


Figure 16: Bus and Pin Symbols



#### Note

The properties on custom symbols must be the same as those on standard SmartModel symbols.

## Using Hardware Models with QuickSim II

This section describes how to configure Release 3.5a of ModelAccess for QuickSim II. ModelAccess is the software you use to interface hardware models with the simulator. Before you begin, review the release notes for ModelAccess for QuickSim in the [Hardware Modeling Release Notes](#). If you are using the C-series releases of QuickSim II, you must use R3.0 or better of the ModelAccess for QuickSim II interface software.

These instructions assume that you have already installed the following software:

- Mentor Graphics software, including QuickSim II V8.6 or later; and the Design Data Port package, as described by Mentor Graphics Corporation.
- R3.1a or later of ModelSource or LM-family hardware modeling software.

## Setting up Hardware Models in QuickSim II

To set up the LM-family ModelAccess interface software for QuickSim II, complete the following steps:

1. [“Running lmc\\_hm\\_install” on page 247](#)
2. [“Rebuilding the Mentor Graphics Tree” on page 248](#)

### Running lmc\_hm\_install

To run the ModelAccess installation script, enter the following commands. If you are on NT, execute these commands in a MGC “mkns” shell.

```
% cd install_dir/sms/maqs_30/lmc_hm.$vco/bin
% lmc_hm_install -m mgc_home -l lm_home -p ma_home
```

where:

- *\$vco* is the vendor CPU operating system suffix that corresponds to your platform, as shown in [Table 29](#).
- *mgc\_home* is the directory path that contains the Mentor Graphics software tree. You can use \$MGC\_HOME if you have set it, or a pathname such as /home/mentor.
- *lm\_home* is the directory path that contains the LM-family and ModelSource system software; for example, /home/lm.
- *ma\_home* is the directory path that contains the ModelAccess interface software; for example, /home/lmc\_hm.sss.

**Table 29: Mentor Graphics Vendor CPU Operating System Suffixes**

| Host                       | Vendor CPU Operating System Suffix ( <i>\$vco</i> ) |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Sun SPARC (Solaris)        | ss5                                                 |
| HP 9000 Series 700         | hpu                                                 |
| Intel Pentium (Windows NT) | ixn                                                 |

When the script completes, the following message appears on the screen:

1. Invoke the Mentor Installation tool
 

```
> cd /an_idea_tree/install18
> install
```

2. From the "Mentor Graphics Install" tool window
  - > Admin
  - > Rebuild MGC Tree
3. In the "Prompt" window enter the proper path to the MGC\_HOME to be rebuilt. Click on
  - > OK
4. "Rebuild MGC Tree Results" window appears. AFTER Rebuild completes. Click on
  - > OK
5. From the "Mentor Graphics Install" tool window
  - > File
  - > Exit
6. "Install Warning" window appears. Click on
  - > OK



---

**Note**

This process rebuilds the Mentor tree with the newly installed hardware modeler package.

---

## Rebuilding the Mentor Graphics Tree

The final step is to rebuild the Mentor Graphics tree using the Mentor Graphics installation script.

### Using install, version C.1

1. To invoke this program, enter the following:

```
% cd mgc_home/install18 ./install
```

2. When the install tool appears, use the mouse to select the Admin > Rebuild MGC Tree pull-down menu item. The program prompts you to enter the MGC tree pathname.
3. If you have defined \$MGC\_HOME, that path will appear; otherwise, enter the full pathname of the Mentor Graphics tree that you want to rebuild, such as the *mgc\_home* pathname described in ["Rebuilding the Mentor Graphics Tree" on page 248](#).
4. Click on OK or press the Return key to accept this pathname. The install program takes several minutes to rebuild the Mentor Graphics tree. The program prints a number of messages to the Results screen. You should ensure that no errors or warnings are printed, especially warnings generated by the lmc\_hm package indicating that you are missing certain Mentor Graphics software packages.

5. When the rebuild is complete, click on OK to delete the Results screen.
6. Use the mouse to select the File > Exit pull-down menu item.

This completes the ModelAccess installation procedure. You are now ready to begin model registration and simulation.

## Using Hardware Models in QuickSim II

This section describes how to prepare and use hardware models in QuickSim II. We begin with an overview of the Mentor Graphics design environment that describes why models must be registered in order to function in this environment. The section also describes how to use the `lm_model` utility to register hardware models.

The operation of the hardware modeling system during simulation is transparent to the user in most respects. However, a number of signal instance commands are available to enable or disable QuickSim II or hardware modeling features for selected instances during simulation. This section provides descriptions and examples of those commands.

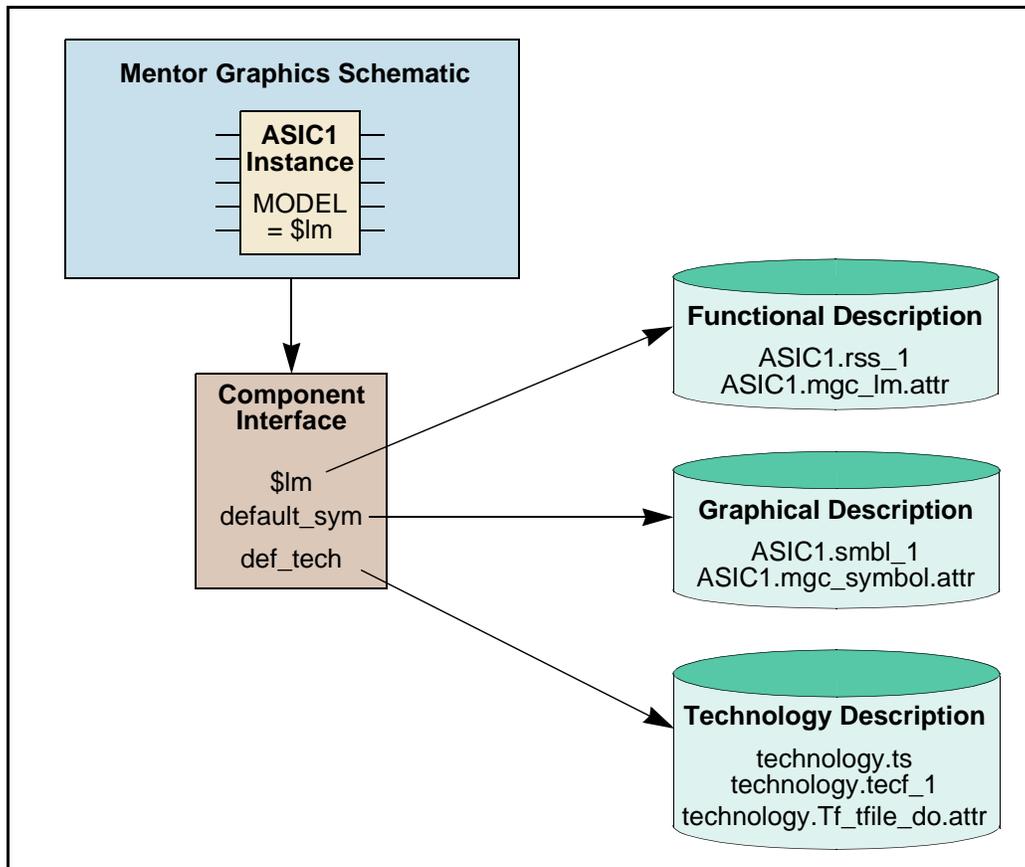
### The Mentor Graphics Design Environment

In the post-V8.0 QuickSim-family environment, an instance of a component placed on a schematic references a component interface. A component interface contains a set of descriptors that define aspects of a component, such as its functionality, graphical representation (symbol), and timing constraints.

There can be several variations of each descriptor for a component, such as:

- Several functional descriptions of the component using different modeling methods such as BLM, VHDL, or hardware models.
- Several graphical descriptions (symbols) of the component such as ANSI, MG\_STD, or your company standard.
- Several technology descriptions (timing constraints) of the component with different timing grades.

The Mentor Graphics analysis tools use the value of the MODEL property as a label to identify the descriptors that define the model. For example, [Figure 17](#) shows an instance with a MODEL property of `$lm`. The `$lm` label is the default label for the functional description of a hardware model. By examining the model table of the component interface, a match can be found between the MODEL property and the files that comprise the functional description of the hardware model.



**Figure 17: Sample Component Interface for a Hardware Model**

Mentor Graphics analysis tools use the following rules to determine the appropriate descriptors:

1. If a label match is found, the analysis tool uses the descriptor identified by the label.
2. If a label match is not found, the analysis tool uses the default label for the descriptor.
3. If a label match is not found and there is no default label, the descriptor is optional and is not used.

## Model Registration

Because multiple descriptions can exist for the same component, you must register each model to specify the model's component interface and descriptors. The `lm_model` utility is a tool for registering hardware models. If a QuickSim II component does not already exist, `lm_model` creates one, along with a component interface that specifies the functional, graphical, and technology descriptions for the model.

The `lm_model` utility registers a hardware model in three steps, using the model's Shell Software as source files:

1. Creates a symbol for the model and registers it with the component interface.
2. Creates, compiles, and registers a technology File, which contains the timing description of the model in a Mentor Graphics proprietary format. The user can choose to use either this technology file or the Shell Software timing files during simulation. For more information, refer to [“Timing Shell Selection” on page 260](#).
3. Registers the functional description with the component interface.

The `lm_model` command, as illustrated in [Figure 18](#), calls a number of other utilities. The `reg_model` utility and Technology Compiler (`tc`) are Mentor Graphics utilities; for more information about these utilities, refer to your Mentor Graphics documentation. For more information on the `tmg_to_ts` converter, refer to [“lm\\_model Command Reference” on page 266](#). For more information on the `lm_model` utility, refer to [“tmg\\_to\\_ts Command Reference” on page 269](#).

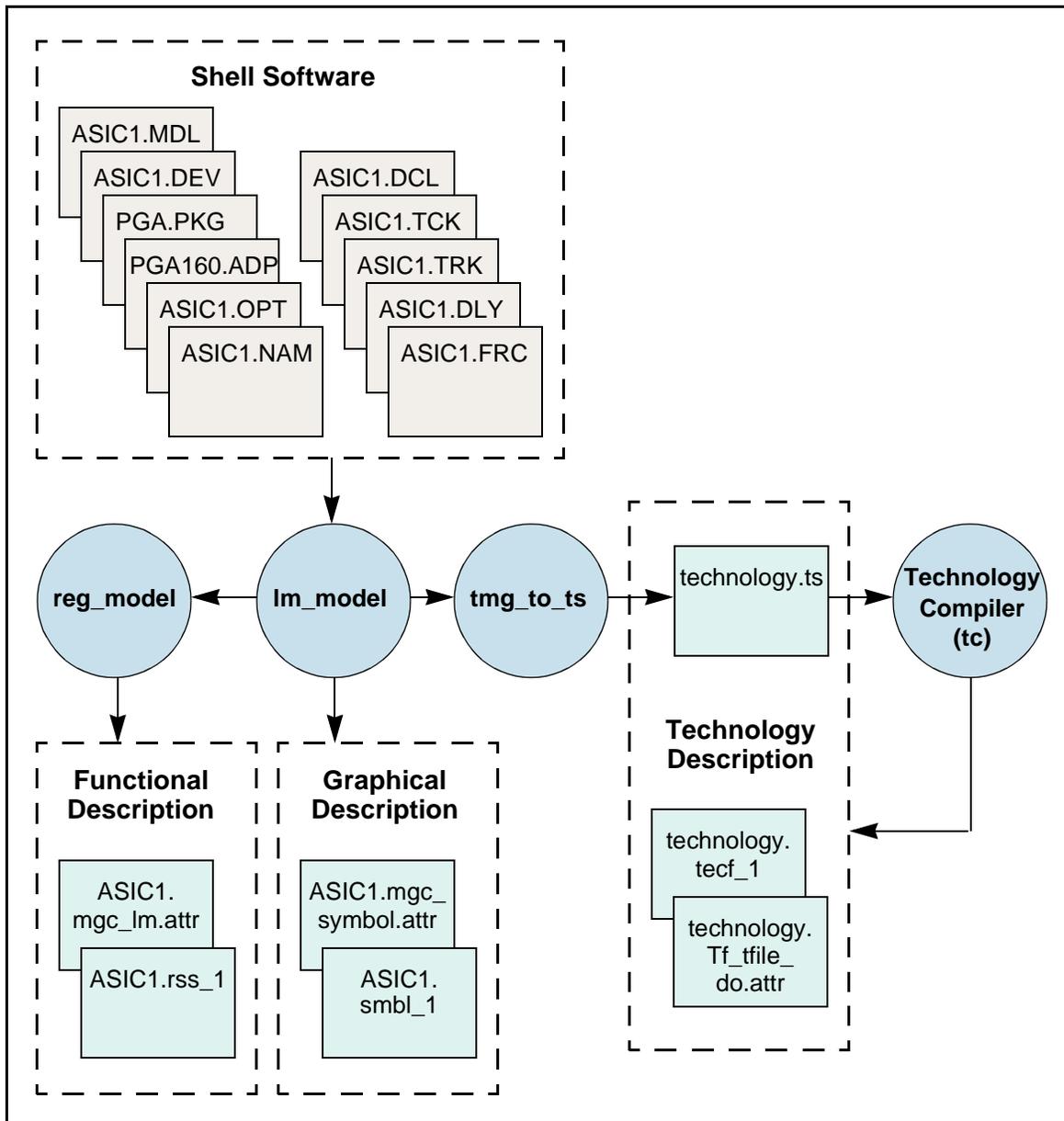


Figure 18: Hardware Model Registration

## Registering a Model with Im\_model

All hardware models, whether user-created or purchased from Synopsys, must be registered with the `Im_model` utility before you can use them in the QuickSim II simulation environment. The following list shows the basic steps involved in preparing a hardware model for simulation:

1. [Running the Im\\_model Utility](#), discussed next.
2. [Checking the Transcript](#) for any errors or warnings.

3. [Editing the Symbol](#) to meet any additional symbol conventions (optional).
4. [Verifying the Technology File](#) (not required if Shell Software timing files are used in place of this file; for more information, refer to [“Timing Shell Selection” on page 260](#)).

## Running the Im\_model Utility

You can use the `Im_model` shell command to register a hardware model. To run `Im_model`, use the following syntax.

### Syntax

```
Im_model input_dir [output_path] [-Dir name] [-LLabel label]
[-Mdl mdl_filename] [-Step Register|Symbol|Timing|Update] [-Replace]
```

For a complete description of `Im_model` syntax and options, refer to [“Im\\_model Command Reference” on page 266](#).

### Example

The following example shows how you might register a 74LS74 model which has a model file named `74LS74A.MDL`. This example assumes that `$MGC_WD` is set to `/user/models`, which contains a Shell Software directory called `74ls74`.

```
Im_model 74ls74 -m 74LS74A
```

This command creates a `/user/models/74LS74` component directory—if one did not already exist—containing the files shown in [Table 30](#).

**Table 30: Sample Component Directory**

| File                                       | Description                            |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <code>74LS74A.rss_1</code>                 | Registered Shell Software              |
| <code>74LS74A.mgc_lm.attr</code>           | Compiled and registered Shell Software |
| <code>part.part_1</code>                   | EDDM part                              |
| <code>part.Eddm_part.attr</code>           | EDDM part                              |
| <code>74LS74.smb1_1</code>                 | Symbol graphics                        |
| <code>74LS74.mgc_symbol.attr</code>        | Symbol graphics                        |
| <code>74LS74A_tech.ts</code>               | Source technology file                 |
| <code>74LS74A_tech.tecf_1</code>           | Compiled technology file               |
| <code>74LS74A_tech.Tf_tfile_do.attr</code> | Versioned technology file              |

**Note**

Previous versions of `lm_model` copied Shell Software source files into the component directory and registered these files. However, the current version registers only a reference pathname to the Shell Software files and does not copy the files.

## Checking the Transcript

The transcript displays information about the progress of the registration, in addition to notes, warnings, and errors.

The `lm_model` utility checks that the Shell Software is syntactically and semantically correct; this is equivalent to running the `lm Check Shell Software` utility. If `lm_model` encounters an error condition, it stops execution and prints a message describing the source of the error. Warning and information messages print to the screen, but do not halt the execution of `lm_model`.

If you get an error, you should fix the problem in the Shell Software and then run `lm_model` again to complete the registration.

The following is an `lm_model` transcript for the 74LS74 model:

```
// ModelAccess for QuickSim II v2.0, (a.k.a. lmc_hm v2.0)
// lm_model v8.5_2.1 Fri Oct 18 18:32:32 PDT 1996
// Note: Input directory "74ls74"
// resolves to "/user/johnd/lmc/qa/lmc_hm/work.sss/74ls74".
// Note: Output directory "74LS74"
// resolves to "/user/johnd/lmc/qa/lmc_hm/work.sss/74LS74".
//
// Note: Using "74LS74A.MDL" file for conversion.
// Note: Compiling symbol generator program.
// Note: Linking symbol generator program.
// Note: Creating symbol.
// tmg_to_ts v8.5_2.1 Sat Oct 19 20:18:24 PDT 1996
// Falcon Framework v8.5_2.5 Thu May 30 17:31:43 PDT 1996
//
// Copyright (c) Mentor Graphics Corporation, 1982-1995, All Rights Reserved.
// UNPUBLISHED, LICENSED SOFTWARE.
// CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION WHICH IS THE
// PROPERTY OF MENTOR GRAPHICS CORPORATION OR ITS LICENSORS.
//
// Mentor Graphics software executing under Sun SPARC SunOS.
//
// TC - The Technology Compiler v8.5_2.2 Sat Jun 22 10:56:50 PDT 1996
// Falcon Framework v8.5_2.5 Thu May 30 17:31:43 PDT 1996
//
// Copyright (c) Mentor Graphics Corporation, 1982-1995, All Rights Reserved.
// UNPUBLISHED, LICENSED SOFTWARE.
```

```
// CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION WHICH IS THE
// PROPERTY OF MENTOR GRAPHICS CORPORATION OR ITS LICENSORS.
//
// Mentor Graphics software executing under Sun SPARC SunOS.
//
//
// Note: lm_model completed successfully
```

## Editing the Symbol

During registration, the `lm_model` utility reads the Shell Software to determine the device's input, output, and I/O pin names. The utility then flattens all buses to individual bits and generates a Mentor Graphics Design Architect script that creates the symbol.

The process uses the following rules to create the symbol:

- All input pins are placed starting in the lower left corner and proceeding upwards.
- All output pins are placed starting in the lower right corner and proceeding upwards.
- I/O pins are placed for minimizing the symbol's height.
- All buses are grouped with the least significant bit placed lower on the symbol than the most significant bit.
- A single grid spacing is left between buses, grouped scalar pins, input and I/O pins, and output and I/O pins.

Since symbol standards vary, you may need to use the Symbol Editor in Design Architect to modify the appearance of the automatically-generated symbol. For more information, refer to your Design Architect documentation.

## Verifying the Technology File

During registration, `lm_model` calls the `tmg_to_ts` converter. This converter extracts timing information from the following Shell Software files to create a Technology File:

- Variable declarations (.DCL) file
- Timing checks (.TCK) file
- State tracking (.TRK) file
- Delays (.DLY) file
- Force values (.FRC) file

The technology file specifies propagation delays and some timing checks, as well as technology-dependent data for the simulation model. [Table 31](#) shows how Shell Software timing statements are converted into technology file statements.

**Note**

Many Shell Software statements have no technology file equivalents. The `tmg_to_ts` converter includes each “untranslatable” statement in the technology file as a comment and/or generates a warning message. For this reason, we recommend that you use the Shell Software timing files instead of the technology file during simulation. For instructions, refer to [“Timing Shell Selection” on page 260](#).

**Table 31: Shell Software to Technology File Conversion**

| Shell Software Statements                                                                                            | Technology File Statements                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cycle_time input_state (storage_pin) = timing_spec</code>                                                      | fMIN = <i>min_freq</i> on <i>storage_pin</i> ( <i>input_trans</i> )<br>fMAX = <i>max_freq</i> on <i>storage_pin</i> ( <i>input_trans</i> ) |
| <code>decrement name</code>                                                                                          | —                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>default_delay timing_spec</code>                                                                               | tP = <i>timing_spec</i> on <i>eval_storage_pin</i> ( <i>input_trans</i> ) to <i>output_pin</i> ( <i>output_trans</i> )                     |
| <code>delay from input_state (eval_storage_pin) to output_state (output_pin) = timing_spec</code>                    | tP = <i>timing_spec</i> on <i>eval_storage_pin</i> ( <i>input_trans</i> ) to <i>output_pin</i> ( <i>output_trans</i> )                     |
| <code>force_value output_pin = pin_value</code>                                                                      | —                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>hold after input_state<sup>1</sup> (storage_pin) of input_state<sup>2</sup> (input_pin) = timing_spec</code>   | tH = <i>timing_spec</i> on <i>input_pin</i> ( <i>input_state<sup>2</sup></i> ) to <i>storage_pin</i> ( <i>input_trans<sup>1</sup></i> )    |
| <code>if (condition) { statements }<br/>else_if (condition) { statements }<br/>else { statements }<br/>end_if</code> | —                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>increment name</code>                                                                                          | —                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>print (severity, arguments)</code>                                                                             | —                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>pulse_width input_state (storage_pin) = timing_spec</code>                                                     | tW = <i>timing_spec</i> on <i>storage_pin</i> ( <i>input_state</i> )<br>No equivalent to maximum pulse width time.                         |

**Table 31: Shell Software to Technology File Conversion (Continued)**

| Shell Software Statements                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Technology File Statements                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| recovery after ( <i>condition</i> )<br>during ( <i>condition</i> )<br>before <i>input_state</i> ( <i>storage_pin</i> ) =<br><i>timing_spec</i><br>else_during ( <i>condition</i> )<br>before <i>input_state</i> ( <i>storage_pin</i> ) =<br><i>timing_spec</i><br>else<br>before <i>input_state</i> ( <i>storage_pin</i> ) =<br><i>timing_spec</i><br>end_during | —                                                                                                                                            |
| set <i>name</i> = <i>value</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | —                                                                                                                                            |
| setup before <i>input_state</i> <sup>1</sup> ( <i>storage_pin</i> ) of<br><i>input_state</i> <sup>2</sup> ( <i>input_pin</i> ) = <i>timing_spec</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                              | tS = <i>timing_spec</i> on <i>input_pin</i> ( <i>input_state</i> <sup>2</sup> ) to<br><i>storage_pin</i> ( <i>input_trans</i> <sup>1</sup> ) |
| stable valid ( <i>input_pin</i> ) while ( <i>store_pin</i> =<br><i>input_state</i> )                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | tSTAB = 0 : 0 on <i>input_pin</i> (V) to <i>store_pin</i> ( <i>trans1</i> ,<br><i>trans2</i> )                                               |
| var <i>enumerated_list name</i> = <i>identifier</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | —                                                                                                                                            |
| var counter <i>name</i> = <i>number</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | —                                                                                                                                            |
| when ( <i>condition</i> ) { <i>statements</i> }<br>else_when ( <i>condition</i> ) { <i>statements</i> }<br>else { <i>statements</i> }<br>end_when                                                                                                                                                                                                                | with condition<br>No equivalents to else_when and else clauses                                                                               |

## Modifying a Hardware Model

Whenever you change a hardware model’s Shell Software, you need to rerun `lm_model`. However, you may be able to use the `-Step` option to perform just the steps you need. The following list provides some guidelines about how to take advantage of the `-Step` option:

- If you change, add, or delete a pin name in the Shell Software, then you must rerun all three steps of `lm_model` (the default). Because you are recreating the symbol, you must also use the `-Replace` option. For example:

```
lm_model 741s74 -r
```

- If you change, add, or delete a timing specification in the Shell Software timing files and you are using the Technology File in QuickSim II, you should use `lm_model` with the `-Step Timing` switch. For example:

```
lm_model 741s74 -s t
```

This step is equivalent to running `tmg_to_ts` to create the technology file and then running `tc` to compile and register it with the component interface.

- If you make any changes to the Shell Software other than changing pin names and timing information, you should use `lm_model` with the `-Step Register` switch; for example:

```
lm_model 741s74 -s r
```

This step is equivalent to running `reg_model`.

- If you have not changed any pin names and want to run both the registration and timing steps, you can use `lm_model` with the `-Step Update` switch to update the component interface without recreating the symbol. For example:

```
lm_model 741s74 -s u
```

This switch is particularly useful, because symbol generation is the most time-consuming step of registration and you lose all manual edits you have made to a symbol when you regenerate it.

- If you already have a working symbol, you can use `-Step Update` to register the hardware model functionality with the existing component. For example, you would use `-Step Update` if you have a different type of model for the same component. You can then change the `MODEL` property in the schematic in order to specify whether you want to use the hardware model or another type of model for an instance.

## Simulating with Hardware Models in QuickSim II

Once you have registered each hardware model in your design and set the `MODEL` property to the appropriate label for instances that reference those models, you are ready to simulate. You can use the `SIGNAL INSTANCE` command to turn on and off a number of QuickSim II or hardware modeling features for selected instances during simulation.

### Signal Instance Command Summary

[Table 32](#) provides a summary of these features and the specific commands used to implement them; the subsections that follow describe the features in more depth. Some features can also be implemented through Shell Software statements or the `lm` utilities; for details, refer to the [Shell Software Reference Manual](#). For instructions on how to select one or more instances, refer to your QuickSim II documentation.



#### Note

If the simulator is reset with the `$reset_state` function, any prior Signal Instance commands are lost because the simulator is reset to the same state it was at invocation.

**Table 32: Signal Instance Command Summary**

| Feature                          | Command                                 | Description                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Model evaluation                 | enable                                  | Enables evaluation of the instance by QuickSim II (default)                                                            |
|                                  | disable                                 | Disables evaluation of the instance by QuickSim II                                                                     |
| Timing shell selection           | lst [-p all]                            | Selects hardware model Shell Software files to describe the instance's timing                                          |
|                                  | no1st [-p all]                          | Selects the Technology File to describe the instance's timing (Default)                                                |
| Unknown handling and propagation | xp [-p <i>pin_name</i> ]                | Maps an unknown input state to the previous state (Default)                                                            |
|                                  | x0 [-p <i>pin_name</i> ]                | Maps an unknown input state to a logic zero state                                                                      |
|                                  | x1 [-p <i>pin_name</i> ]                | Maps an unknown input state to a logic one state                                                                       |
|                                  | xz [-p <i>pin_name</i> ]                | Maps an unknown input state to a float state                                                                           |
|                                  | propagate                               | Propagates unknowns through the hardware model                                                                         |
|                                  | nopropagate                             | Turns off unknown propagation (default)                                                                                |
|                                  | default_propagation<br>-p <i>number</i> | Sets the number of additional sequences to be played to the instance when unknown propagation is enabled (default = 0) |
|                                  | random_seed<br>-p <i>seed</i>           | Sets the value of the seed for the random sequence generator when unknown propagation is enabled (default = 0)         |
| Indeterminate strength mapping   | is                                      | Maps an indeterminate strength (i) to a strong strength (s) (default)                                                  |
|                                  | iz                                      | Maps an indeterminate strength (i) to a high-impedance strength (z)                                                    |
| Test vector logging              | logvectors<br>-p <i>filename</i>        | Turns on test vector logging                                                                                           |
|                                  | nologvectors                            | Turns off test vector logging (default)                                                                                |

**Table 32: Signal Instance Command Summary (Continued)**

| Feature            | Command                              | Description                                                                                                             |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Timing measurement | <code>tm [-p <i>filename</i>]</code> | Turns on timing measurement: returns the actual measured delays to QuickSim II                                          |
|                    | <code>notm</code>                    | Turns off timing measurement: uses the delay values specified in the Shell Software or in the technology file (default) |
| Loop mode          | <code>loop</code>                    | Turns on loop mode: the modeling system repeatedly plays a pattern history to the physical device                       |
|                    | <code>noloop</code>                  | Turns off loop mode (default)                                                                                           |
| Information        | <code>dump</code>                    | Reports all available information about the selected instance of a hardware modeled device                              |
|                    | <code>lmc [-p shell allshell]</code> | Reports the type of timing shell (Shell Software or technology file) for the selected instance                          |
|                    | <code>vector</code>                  | Reports the runtime vector count of the selected instance                                                               |

## Model Evaluation

By default, all component instances are evaluated in QuickSim II. If you want to disable evaluation of models for selected instances, you can use the SIGnal INSTance disable command. This command isolates sections of the design and shortens the simulation time for debugging purposes. To turn model evaluation on again for selected instances, you can use SIGnal INSTance enable.

## Timing Shell Selection

The SIGnal INSTance `lst` command lets you use the hardware model's Shell Software timing files instead of the default technology file during evaluation of the selected instances. You can use the SIGnal INSTance `no1st` command to switch back to the technology file for selected instances.

The optional `-p all` argument enables you to choose the type of timing shell for all hardware models in the design, if you have at least one instance selected. For example, you could use the following command before simulating:

```
sig inst lst -p all
```

QuickSim II ignores the technology files for all hardware models in the design and take the timing (delays and timing checks) directly from the Shell Software. If you decided you wanted to use the technology files instead for all hardware models, you could use the following command to switch back to the default timing shell without having to select every instance:

```
sig inst nolst -p all
```

To select Shell Software timing every time you invoke QuickSim II with a particular design, you can create or edit a quicksim.startup file under the design viewpoint. Add the following line to the file to directly call the function that implements this Signal Instance command:

```
$signal_instances("lst", "all", "/I$1");
```

Substitute the instance name of any hardware modeled device for /I\$1.

You can also use the actual measured delays from the device as an alternative timing option with hardware models. For more information about this feature, refer to [“Timing Measurement” on page 263](#).

## Performance Monitoring

You can monitor the performance of the hardware modeler and append the results to the simulator log file after simulation. To enable performance monitoring, in the window where you are running the simulator, enter the following:

```
% setenv LM_OPTION "monitor_performance"
```

For more information, refer to “Performance Monitoring” in the *ModelSource User’s Manual*.

## Unknown Handling and Propagation

The unknown handling and propagation commands enable you to modify the hardware modeling system’s default handling of device input and I/O pins that the simulator sets to unknown.

### Unknown Mapping

Since the hardware modeling system cannot present an unknown logic level to a physical device, unknown values presented to inputs of hardware models must be mapped to known values. The SIGNAL INSTance xp, x0, x1, and xz commands map unknowns for all instances of the selected components to the previous state, logic zero, logic one, or high-impedance (float), respectively. By default, unknowns are mapped to the previous state. Unknowns mapped to high-impedance are also mapped to the previous state.

You can customize unknown handling per pin by using the `-p pin_name` argument. For example, you can issue the following:

```
sig inst x0
sig inst x1 -p clk1
```

These commands map all unknowns for the selected components—except for unknowns received on the `clk1` pin—to logic zero (0). Any unknowns received on `clk1` are mapped to logic one (1).

These Signal Instance commands perform the same function as the Shell Software `on_unknown` statement, and the `set_previous`, `set_low`, `set_high`, and `set_float` attributes of the `in_pin` and `io_pin` statements. For more information, refer to the [Shell Software Reference Manual](#). Note that explicit Shell Software settings override any Signal Instance commands.

## Unknown Propagation

The SIGnal INSTance `propagate` command turns on unknown propagation for all instances of the selected components. The modeling system propagates the unknowns through the model using multi-sequence pattern play. The SIGnal INSTance `nopropagate` command turns off unknown propagation for all instances of the currently selected component, which is the default behavior.

When unknown propagation is on, two pattern sequences are used by default. However, you can specify up to twenty additional sequences with the `default_propagation -p number` command, for a total of 22 sequences. You can also specify the value of the seed for the random sequence generator with the `random_seed -p seed` command. The value of the seed is 0 by default, but any number from 0 to 65,535 can be used.

For example, you can issue the following:

```
sig inst propagate
sig inst default_propagation -p 8
sig inst random_seed -p 7896
```

These commands turn unknown propagation on for all instances of the selected components. The modeling system plays a total of ten sequences (the primary, secondary, and eight additional sequences) per instance to the device, and uses the random sequence seed 7,896.

These Signal Instance commands perform the same function as the Shell Software `on_unknown` statement. Note that explicit Shell Software settings override any Signal Instance commands, except for when the SIGnal INSTance `nopropagate` command is used. This exception allows the simulator to turn off unknown propagation if the modeling system is running out of pattern memory. For more information about unknown propagation, refer to the [Shell Software Reference Manual](#) and the [LM-family Modeler Manual](#) or the [ModelSource User's Manual](#).

## Indeterminate Strength Mapping

The SIGnal INSTance `is` and SIGnal INSTance `iz` commands enable you to map indeterminate strength pin values received on inputs of hardware models to either strong (hard) or high-impedance (float) strengths. The modeling system treats high-impedance strength pin values as unknowns and maps or propagates them accordingly. By default, the system maps indeterminate strengths to strong strengths.

## Test Vector Logging

The SIGnal INSTance `logvectors -p filename` command turns on modeling system test vector logging for the selected instance. With test vector logging enabled, the inputs to the device and sensed outputs from the device are stored to *filename*. By convention, the *filename* used for the test vector output is *device\_name.VEC*. The SIGnal INSTance `nologvectors` command turns off test vector logging for the selected instance, which is the default behavior.

For example, consider the following commands:

```
sig inst logvectors -p '$ASIC2/vectors/vector11.VEC'
dofile '$ASIC2/dofiles/run11.do'
sig inst nologvectors
```

In this example, the modeling system creates a test vector file called `vector11.VEC`. This file contains the vectors played to and sensed from the selected instance during the simulation run by the `dofile`. The SIGnal INSTance `nologvectors` command turns off the modeling system test vector logging capability.

After logging vectors, you can replay them directly to the device and note any discrepancies using the `lm Play Vectors` utility. This utility is particularly useful for ASIC verification. For more information about ASIC verification and test vector (`.VEC`) file format, refer to the [LM-family Modeler Manual](#) or the [ModelSource User's Manual](#).

## Timing Measurement

The SIGnal INSTance `tm [-p filename]` command turns on the modeling system timing measurement for the selected instance. The system then returns to the simulator the actual measured delay values for that instance. If you provide an optional *filename*, the system also saves the measured delays to a timing measurement (`.TIM`) file. By convention, *device\_name.TIM* is the *filename* used for the timing measurement output.

The SIGnal INSTance `notm` command turns off timing measurement for the selected instance, which is the default behavior. If timing measurement is disabled, the Technology File delays (or the Shell Software delays if SIGnal INSTance `lst` is specified) are returned to the simulator.

For example, consider the following commands:

```
sig inst tm -p '$ASIC2/timing/timing11.TIM'
dofile '$ASIC2/dofiles/run11.do'
sig inst notm
```

In this example, the modeling system creates a timing measurement file called `timing11.TIM`. This file contains the delays of the selected instance measured during the simulation run created by the `dofile`. The `SIGnal INSTance notm` command turns off the modeling system timing measurement capability.

This Signal Instance command performs a similar function to that of the `lm Measure Timing` utility. Timing measurement is particularly useful for ASIC verification. For more information about ASIC verification and timing measurement (`.TIM`) file format, refer to the *LM-family Modeler Manual* or the *ModelSource User's Manual*.



#### Note

---

The timing measurement (`.TIM`) file can be converted to a Shell Software delays (`.DLY`) file by using the `lm Create Timing File` utility. (For more information, refer to the *LM-family Modeler Manual* or the *ModelSource User's Manual*.) The delays file can then be converted into a technology file, if desired, by using the `lm_model` utility with the `-Step Timing` option.

---

## Loop Mode

The `SIGnal INSTance loop` command turns on the modeling system pattern looping capability (loop mode) for the currently selected instance. In loop mode, the modeling system continually replays the complete pattern history of the selected instance to the device. The `SIGnal INSTance noloop` command turns off pattern looping.

Pattern looping is a model development feature useful for analyzing the device behavior and pattern history with an oscilloscope or logic analyzer connected to the device. However, while loop mode is enabled, no other user can access the modeling system; patterns are replayed to the selected device exclusively until loop mode is disabled. For this reason, QuickSim II returns an error if this command is specified when more than one user is accessing the modeling system.

## Printing Model Information

A number of Signal Instance commands are available for printing information about the selected model instances. The SIGnal INSTance dump command prints all information available about the currently selected instances, including:

- Instance ID
- Name of the modeling system in which the hardware model is located
- Setting for test vector logging (On or Off)
- Setting for indeterminate strength mapping (S or Z)
- Setting for Shell Software timing (On or Off)
- Model name, as specified in the Shell Software device\_name
- Setting for timing measurement (On or Off)
- Setting for loop mode (On or Off)
- Runtime vector count
- Evaluation status (Enabled or Disabled)

The SIGnal INSTance lmc and SIGnal INSTance vector commands print subsets of the information provided by SIGnal INSTance dump:

- The SIGnal INSTance lmc -p shell command prints the Shell Software timing setting (On if you have specified SIGnal INSTance lst; Off if you have not) for the selected instances. SIGnal INSTance lmc -p allshell prints the Shell Software timing setting for all hardware model instances, if you have at least one instance selected. If you do not specify one of the -p arguments, this command will print a list of the available subcommands.
- The SIGnal INSTance vector command prints the runtime vector count of the selected instances.

## Performance Monitoring

You can monitor the performance of the hardware modeler and append the results to the simulator log file after simulation. To enable performance monitoring, in the window where you are running the simulator, enter the following:

```
% setenv LM_OPTION "monitor_performance"
```

For more information, refer to “Performance Monitoring” in the *ModelSource User’s Manual*.

## Ending the Simulation Session

Termination of a normal simulation session notifies the hardware modeling system that the simulation session has ended. All modeling system resources being used by that simulation are then made available for other users.

If the simulation exits abnormally, “orphaned” processes may exist on the modeling system, even though the simulation has terminated. If `lmdaemon` is running on your workstation, it automatically deletes orphaned processes. You can also use the `lm Abort User` utility to remove the unwanted processes manually. Both of these methods release modeling system resources. (For more information about `lmdaemon` and the `lm` utilities, refer to the *LM-family Modeler Manual* or the *ModelSource User's Manual*.)

LM-family and ModelSource modeling systems support simulation save and restore capabilities. When a save simulation state is performed, the state of all hardware models being used by the simulation session is automatically saved into a QuickSim II save directory. Similarly, restoring the simulation state automatically restores the state of the model as used by the saved simulation, including all stored pattern history.



### Attention

If you are using Shell Software that contains enhanced features—such as model state tracking or “when” conditions—the translation to the resulting technology file may be incomplete and contain “compromise” statements. If you elect to use the technology file instead of the Shell Software during simulation, the device may exhibit incorrect timing and/or behavior. To eliminate this possibility, translate the technology file from pre-R2.0 Shell Software, which does not contain these statements, or use the Shell Software directly during simulation by issuing the `SIGNAL INSTANCE lst` command on the hardware model instance. For more information about this procedure, refer to “[Timing Shell Selection](#)” on page 260.

## lm\_model Command Reference

The `lm_model` shell command registers a hardware model by invoking hardware model registration and conversion programs.

### Syntax

```
lm_model input_dir [output_path] [-Dir name] [-Ifc interface] [-Label label]
 [-Mdl mdl_filename] [-Step Register|Symbol|Timing|Update] [-Replace]
 [-VERBOSE] [-Help] [-Usage] [-VERSION] [-Old] [-LM]
```

## Required Argument

*input\_dir* Specifies the pathname to the directory containing the files to be registered. This argument is required and must appear first. All pathname specifications use the following location convention:

If the pathname is relative, the *input\_dir* is assumed to be in the working directory, as specified by \$MGC\_WD. If \$MGC\_WD is not set, the *input\_dir* is assumed to be in the current working directory.

If the pathname starts with a dollar sign (\$), the *input\_dir* is assumed to be in the location of the location map variable specified after the dollar sign.

If the pathname is an absolute pathname, the *input\_dir* is assumed to be in the location of the absolute pathname.

## Optional Arguments

*output\_path* Specifies the pathname to the directory that contains the component information. If an *output\_path* is not specified, then it defaults to the parent directory of the *input\_dir*.

**-Dir name** Specifies just the new name of the output component directory within the *output\_path*; for example, MC68020. By default, the name is created from the base name of *input\_dir* by removing any leading dollar (\$) characters and converting all lowercase characters to uppercase. If the output component directory name is the same as the input directory name, *lm\_model* will generate an error and fail rather than overwrite the input directory.

**-Ifc interface** Specifies the component interface(s) with which to register the model. Multiple component interfaces can be specified. By default, the model is registered with all component interfaces.

**-LAbel label** Specifies the label(s) to register with the component interface. Multiple labels can be specified. By default, the model is registered with the \$lm label, which corresponds to the functional description.

**-Mdl mdl\_filename** Specifies a particular model (.MDL) file within the *input\_dir*. By default, the system uses the model file with the same base name as the output component directory, which is defined by the **-Dir** switch.

**-Step Register|Symbol|Timing|Update**

Selects particular registration step(s):

- Step Register registers the model's functional description.
- Step Symbol creates and registers the symbol.
- Step Timing creates, compiles, and registers the technology file.
- Step Update is equivalent to -Step Register and -Step Timing.

By default, `lm_model` performs all the registration steps.

- Replace** Deletes the existing component directory and then recreates it. If you try to overwrite an existing symbol without using this switch, `lm_model` fails and generates an error message.
- VERBose** Prints additional messages while `lm_model` is executing.
- Help** Prints help information on each of the available options, then immediately exits.
- Usage** Expands the command line and displays each argument and switch. After printing the usage message, `lm_model` immediately exits.
- VERSion** Prints the single-line version message, then immediately exits.
- Old** Registers the model using the pre-V8.3 method, for compatibility purposes.
- LM** Does not affect `lm_model` execution. The system accepts this argument for compatibility purposes.

## Examples

The `lm_model` utility provides several ways of specifying input and output files and directories. The following examples list a given input directory (model file) and desired output component directory, and then show the `lm_model` command line you would use to get this result.

### Example 1

Input directory: `/user/models/74ls74` (`$MGC_WD` is set to `/user/models`)

Model file: `74LS74.MDL` (same as the component name)

Component (output) directory: /user/models/74LS74 (default output path and directory)

Command: `lm_model 74ls74`

### Example 2

Input directory: /user/models/74ls74 (\$MGC\_WD is set to a directory other than /user/models)

Model file: 74LS74A.MDL (different from the component name)

Component (output) directory: /user/models/74LS74 (default output path and directory)

Command: `lm_model /user/models/74ls74 -m 74LS74A`

### Example 3

Input directory: /user/models/74ls74 (\$MGC\_WD is set to /user/models)

Model file: 74LS74.MDL (same as the component name)

Component (output) directory: /user/project\_xyz/74LS74 (default directory; non-default path)

Command: `lm_model 74ls74 /user/project_xyz`

### Example 4

Input directory: /user/models/74ls74 (\$MGC\_WD is set to /user/models)

Model file: 74LS74.MDL (same as the component name)

Component (output) directory: /user/project\_xyz/latch\_7474 (non-default path and directory)

Command: `lm_model 74ls74 /user/project_xyz -d latch_7474`

## tmg\_to\_ts Command Reference

The `tmg_to_ts` utility reads the Shell Software timing files to create a technology file. Comments from the Shell Software timing statements are not copied to the technology file. You must use the technology compiler (`tc`) to compile the technology file that is created by the `tmg_to_ts` utility before using the technology file in QuickSim II.

In general, you should run the `lm_model` utility—which calls both `tmg_to_ts` and `tc`—rather than running the stand-alone `tmg_to_ts` utility. If you just want to update a model's Technology File, you can run `lm_model` with the `-Step Timing` option. For more information on Technology File creation, refer to [“Verifying the Technology File” on page 255](#).

## Syntax

**tmg\_to\_ts** *input\_dir* [-Out *filename*] [-Replace] [-Help] [-Usage] [-Version]

## Required Arguments

*input\_dir* Specifies the pathname to the Shell Software timing files that you want to convert. If the *input\_dir* is not a full path, it is assumed to be relative to the current directory, specified by \$MGC\_WD.

## Optional Arguments

**-Out *filename*** Specifies an alternative filename for the output file. By default, the output file is called `technology.ts`. All pathname specifications use the following location convention:

If the pathname is a relative pathname, the output file is placed relative to the component directory.

If the pathname starts with period and slash (`./`), the output file is placed in the current working directory as specified by \$MGC\_WD, if it exists.

If the pathname starts with a dollar sign (`$`), the output file is placed in the location of the location map variable specified after the dollar sign.

If the pathname is an absolute pathname, the output file is placed in the location of the absolute pathname.

**-Replace** Replaces the existing contents of the output directory with the new output.

**-Help** Prints help information on each of the available options, then immediately exits.

**-Usage** Expands the command line and displays each argument and switch. After printing the usage message, `tmg_to_ts` immediately exits.

**-Version** Prints the single-line version message, then immediately exits.

---

# A

## Using VERA with FlexModels

---

### Overview

VERA is a testbench automation tool that works as a front-end to Verilog or VHDL simulators. For general information on VERA, refer to:

<http://www.synopsys.com/products/vera>

This appendix explains how to use VERA with FlexModels, including a special section on how to use VERA with FlexModels with VCS. This information is presented in the following sections:

- [“Using FlexModels with the VERA UDF Interface” on page 272](#)
- [“Creating a VERA Testbench” on page 273](#)
- [“VERA Testbench Example” on page 274](#)
- [“Incorporating FlexModels in a VERA Testbench” on page 276](#)
- [“Using VERA with VCS” on page 277](#)



#### Note

For information on using MemPro models with VERA, refer to the [“VERA Testbench Interface”](#) chapter in the *MemPro User’s Manual*.

---

## Using FlexModels with the VERA UDF Interface

FlexModels use the VERA UDF interface. To use FlexModels with Vera, you need to build the VERA dynamic library. [Table 33](#) lists the files containing the Vera UDF information for FlexModels.

**Table 33: FlexModel Files Containing VERA UDF Information**

| File Name      | Description                                                                                                              | Location                    |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| vera_user.c    | Source file containing table of UDF functions used by FlexModels.                                                        | \$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src     |
| vera_slm_pli.o | Object file for VCS and Verilog-XL. This file contains the compiled code for the UDF functions used by FlexModels.       | \$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib |
| vera_slm_mti.o | Object file for MTI Verilog and MTI VHDL. This file contains the compiled code for the UDF functions used by FlexModels. | \$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib |

When building the VERA dynamic library, you need to compile the vera\_user.c file and link the object file (vera\_slm\_pli.o or vera\_slm\_mti.o) for the simulator you are using.



### Attention

If you are building the VERA dynamic library for Verilog on Solaris, do not use the -B symbolic. Using this switch results in unresolved symbol warnings.

For more information on building the VERA dynamic library, refer to the UDF information in the *VERA System Verifier User Manual*.

## Linking VERA with Verilog Simulators

For details on how to link Vera with Verilog simulators using the PLI, refer to the README file in the VERA installation directory:

```
$VERA_HOME/lib/vlog/README
```

In the instructions for “Including Your Own C-Code (UDF) with VERA” at the end of the README file:

1. Substitute the edited copy of `vera_user.c` in `$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src` on the compile line.
2. Substitute `vera_slm_pli.o` for `<UDF_o_files>` on the link line if you are using VCS or Verilog-XL. For MTI Verilog, substitute `vera_slm_mti.o`.

## Linking VERA with the MTI VHDL Simulator

For information on how to link VERA with MTI VHDL, refer to the README file in the VERA installation directory:

```
$VERA_HOME/lib/mti/README
```

In the instructions for “Linking in VERA UDFs Into The MTI-VHDL Simulator” at the beginning of the README file:

1. Substitute the edited copy of `vera_user.c` in `$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src` on the compile line.
2. Substitute `vera_slm_mti.o` for `<o_files>` on the link line.

## Creating a VERA Testbench

To create a VERA testbench to use with FlexModels, follow these steps:

### 1. Include the header files.

[Table 34](#) lists the two required header files.

**Table 34: VERA Header Files**

| File Name                      | Description                                                                                     | Location                                                         |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>flexmodel_pkg.vrh</code> | Contains definitions for generic constants useful in FlexModel commands.                        | <code>\$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src</code>                             |
| <code>model_pkg.vrh</code>     | Contains definitions for model class and model-specific constants useful in FlexModel commands. | <code>\$LMC_HOME/models/model_fx/model_fxversion/src/vera</code> |

## 2. Create an instance of the *ModelFx* class.

Before using FlexModel commands, you must create an instance of the *ModelFx* class in the VERA testbench.

## 3. Send commands to a FlexModel through the model's methods.

In VERA Command Mode, you can use the same FlexModel features and commands that you use in HDL Command Mode. There are a few differences in command usage, however; refer to “Command Syntax Differences in VERA Command Model” in the *FlexModel User's Manual*. For details on specific commands, refer to “FlexModel Command Reference” in the *FlexModel User's Manual*.

# VERA Testbench Example

The following example shows how to incorporate FlexModels in a VERA testbench.

```
#include <vera_defines.vrh> // Vera Defines
#include "flexmodel_pkg.vrh" // FlexModel generic constants defined
here
#include "model_pkg.vrh" // Model class, and model-specific
constants defined here

program model_test
{
 /*
 * Create an instance of the model, argument 1 to the
 * constructor is the string name of the instance in
 * top level Verilog/VHDL testbench.
 * argument 2 is the path to the models clock pin
 * Here the assumption made is that the model is
 * instantiated in a Verilog testbench
 * Since the constructor has been called, this will
 * return at the next posedge of u1.CLK.
 */
 ModelFx model_1 = new("modelInstName_1", "u1.CLK");

 // Create another instance, since time has already elapsed
 // above, this call will return immediately.
 ModelFx model_2 = new("modelInstName_2", "u2.CLK");

 // NOTE : This example assumes that the arguments to the
 // methods have been defined in the VERA testbench.

 // Check that no errors have occurred
 if (model_1.showStatus() == FLEX_VERA_FATAL ||
 model_2.showStatus() == FLEX_VERA_FATAL) {
```

```
 // Errors exist, take suitable action
}

fork
{
 // Send commands to the FlexModel Instance 1

 // Note that the id is encapsulated in the model
 // class and thus is not an argument to the commands.

 model_1.write(address1, data1, `FLEX_WAIT_F, status);
 model_1.write(address2, data2, `FLEX_WAIT_F, status);
 model_1.write(address3, data3, `FLEX_WAIT_F, status);
 model_1.write(address4, data4, `FLEX_WAIT_F, status);

 // Read Back
 model_1.read_req(address1, `FLEX_WAIT_F, status);
 model_1.read_req(address2, `FLEX_WAIT_F, status);
 model_1.read_req(address3, `FLEX_WAIT_F, status);
 model_1.read_req(address4, `FLEX_WAIT_F, status);

 // Check Results
 model_1.read_rslt(address1, tag, result1, status);
 model_1.read_rslt(address2, tag, result2, status);
 model_1.read_rslt(address3, tag, result3, status);
 model_1.read_rslt(address4, tag, result4, status);

 // Synchronize Instance 1 & 2

 // Note that the generic commands are also sent to
 // through the model's instance.

 model_1.synchronize(2, "synch_2", `timeout, status);
}
{
 // Send commands to the FlexModel Instance 2
 model_2.write(address1, data1, `FLEX_WAIT_F, status);
 model_2.write(address2, data2, `FLEX_WAIT_F, status);
 model_2.write(address3, data3, `FLEX_WAIT_F, status);

 // Synchronize Instance 1 & 2
 model_2.synchronize(2, "synch_2", `timeout, status);
}
join // End of fork

} // End of program model_test
```

# Incorporating FlexModels in a VERA Testbench

To incorporate FlexModels in your VERA testbench, use the following procedure. For more information on creating VERA interface files and using models in VERA, refer to the *VERA System Verifier User Manual*.

- 1. Create a working directory and run `flexm_setup` to make copies of the model's interface and example files there, as shown in the following example:**

```
% $LMC_HOME/bin/flexm_setup -dir workdir model_fx
```

You must run `flexm_setup` every time you update your FlexModel installation with a new model version. [Table 35](#) lists the files that `flexm_setup` copies to your working directory.

**Table 35: FlexModel VERA Files**

| File Name            | Description                                             | Location                |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>model_pkg.vr</i>  | Contains FlexModel VERA class and method definitions.   | <i>workdir/src/vera</i> |
| <i>model_pkg.vrh</i> | Contains model definitions for use in VERA testbenches. | <i>workdir/src/vera</i> |

- 2. Compile the VERA source files in the `LMC_HOME` tree.**

You need to compile three files: `lstmodel.vr`, `swiftmodel.vr`, and `flexmodel_pkg.vr`. The following is a sample compile script:

```
% vera -cmp lstmodel.vr -I$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src
% vera -cmp swiftmodel.vr -I$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src
% vera -cmp flexmodel_pkg.vr -I$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src
```

If you are using VERA version 4.0 or earlier, you must compile the `flexmodel_pkg.vr` object with a “`VERA_4`” preprocessor flag. Your compile line would therefore look like the following example:

```
% vera -cmp flexmodel_pkg.vr -I$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src -DVERA_4
```

- 3. Compile the model’s VERA source file, `model_pkg.vr`**

This file includes the `flexmodel_pkg.vrh` file, but the VERA compiler needs to find the other header files too; therefore, you must include the path to the other header files. The following is a sample compile script:

```
% vera -cmp model_pkg.vr -I$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src workdir/src/vera
```

- 4. Create a VERA testbench.**

For details, refer to “[Creating a VERA Testbench](#)” on page 273.

## 5. Compile the VERA testbench.

Although you need to include only the `flexmodel_pkg.vrh` and `model_pkg.vrh` files in your VERA testbench, the VERA compiler needs to find the other header files too; therefore, you need to include the path to the VERA header files included in `LMC_HOME`. The following is a sample compile script:

```
% vera -cmp vera_testbench -I$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src workdir/src/vera
```

## 6. Run the VERA testbench in a Verilog or VHDL simulation environment.

When you run the Verilog or VHDL simulator, the VERA simulator needs to load your compiled VERA object files. You also need to load the following VERA object files:

- `lstmodel.vro`
- `swiftmodel.vro`
- `flexmodel_pkg.vro`
- `model_pkg.vro`
- `testbench.vro`

For more information on loading VERA object files, refer to the *VERA System Verifier User Manual*.



### Attention

To prevent your simulation from ending prematurely in cases where the VERA testbench completes before the Verilog/VHDL testbench, use the `+vera_finish_on_end` switch on your simulator invocation line.

# Using VERA with VCS

The following steps show how to use FlexModels with VERA and VCS. This is just one way of using the VERA simulator's UDF, multiple `.vro` files, and so on. For more information, refer to the *VERA System Verifier User Manual*. All steps shown here are also documented in that manual.

## 1. Compile the VERA source files:

```
% vera -cmp \
 -I$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src \
 $LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src/lstmodel.vr

% vera -cmp \
 -I$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src \
 $LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src/swiftmodel.vr
```

```
% vera -cmp \
 -I$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src \
 $LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src/flexmodel_pkg.vr
```

If you are using VERA version 4.0 or earlier, you must compile the `flexmodel_pkg.vr` object with a “VERA\_4” preprocessor flag. Your compile would therefore look like this:

```
% vera -cmp flexmodel_pkg.vr -I$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src -DVERA_4
% vera -cmp \
 -I$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src \
 -Iworkdir/src/vera \
 workdir/src/vera/model_pkg.vr
```



### Note

If you are building the VERA dynamic library on Solaris, do not use the `-B` symbolic switch. Using this switch results in unresolved symbol warnings.

## 2. Compile your VERA testbench:

```
% vera -cmp \
 -I$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src \
 -Iworkdir/src/vera \
 testbench.vr
```

This step produces two files: `testbench.vro` and `testbench.vshell`.

## 3. Build `vera_local.dll`:

- Compile `$LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src/vera_user.c`

HP-UX

```
% /bin/c89 -c +z -I$VERA_HOME/lib \
 $LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src/vera_user.c
```

Solaris

```
% cc -K pic -c -I$VERA_HOME/lib \
 $LMC_HOME/sim/vera/src/vera_user.c
```

- Link in `$LMC_HOME/lib/platform.lib/vera_slm_pli.o` and `vera_user.o` during the link stage of building the `vera_local.dll`.

HP-UX

```
% ld -b +e syssci_prod_entry +e errno -o vera_local.dll \
 vera_user.o \
 $LMC_HOME/lib/hp700.lib/vera_slm_pli.o \
 $VERA_HOME/lib/vlog/libvlog_br.a \
 $VERA_HOME/lib/libVERA.a -lm -lc
```

## Solaris

```
% ld -G -z text -o vera_local.dl \
 vera_user.o \
 $LMC_HOME/lib/sun4solaris.lib/vera_slm_pli.o \
 $VERA_HOME/lib/vlog/libvlog_br.a \
 $VERA_HOME/lib/libVERA.a
```

#### 4. Set the VERA\_HOME variable to point to the location of your VERA installation directory:

```
% setenv VERA_HOME path_to_VERA_installation
```

#### 5. Set the SSI\_LIB\_FILES variable to point to the vera\_local.dl that you built in Step 3:

```
% setenv SSI_LIB_FILES ./vera_local.dl
```



#### Note

If you are using multiple dynamic libraries (.dl files), use a colon-separated list to specify the search path.

#### 6. Modify the simv build.

Modify the simv build by adding the following:

- -P \${VERA\_HOME}/lib/vera\_pli\_dyn.tab
- \${VERA\_HOME}/lib/libSysSciTask.a
- the vshell file created in Step 2



#### Note

For HP-UX, add -LDFLAGS -E.

For more information, refer to the installation and setup chapter in the *VERA System Verifier User Manual*.

#### 7. Create a file for VERA to load at runtime.

This step assumes that the vro files are in the current working directory. You need to create a file that looks like the following example. The file name for this example file is files\_to\_load:

```
./lstmodel.vro
./swiftmodel.vro
./flexmodel_pkg.vro
./model_pkg.vro
./testbench.vro
```

For more information, refer to the documentation on vera\_mload in the *VERA System Verifier User Manual*.

## 8. Run the simv executable

Add the +vera\_mload switch as shown in the following example:

```
% simv +vera_mload = files_to_load +vera_finish_on_end
```



---

### Note

The +vera\_finish\_on\_end switch prevents your simulation from ending prematurely in cases where the VERA testbench completes before the Verilog testbench.

---

---

# B

---

## LMTV Command Reference

---

### Overview

LMTV is a PLI application that is used to interface SmartModels and FlexModels with Verilog-XL, NC-Verilog, and MTI Verilog. Note that VCS uses the SWIFT interface and not LMTV. You can control the features of the LMTV interface by using:

- [“LMTV Command Line Switches” on page 281](#)
- [“LMTV Commands” on page 283](#)

### LMTV Command Line Switches

LMTV command line switches have a session-wide scope that impacts all SmartModel instances. Notice that the `+laiobj` switch, used by the LAI interface, is not used in either mode of the LMTV interface. Following are brief descriptions for each of the command line switches that you can use with the LMTV interface:

|                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>+notimingchecks</b>                       | Disables timing checks (for example, setup and hold times) and their accompanying messages. The default is to perform the timing checks.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>+<code>[min   typ   max]</code>delays</b> | Specifies a single delay range for all SmartModel instances. The default is to use the delay range in the SmartModel’s DelayRange or RANGE attributes.                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>+lmudtmsg or +laiudtmsg</b>               | Generates a list of the timing files loaded at simulation startup. This is equivalent to setting the command channel command TraceTimeFile to ON. The default is not to list the timing files. For more information about the command channel, refer to the <a href="#">SmartModel Library User’s Manual</a> . |

- +Imoldstr** Maps all SmartModel Library signal strengths to “strong” for all output events that have resistive strength. The default is to use resistive strength to reflect the true state of the SWIFT pin. Use this switch if you have a design that was created in the Verilog-XL-specific SmartModel Library environment and you want simulation conditions to match the Verilog-XL-specific SmartModel Library.
- +Imoldtrans** Indicates that the historic style is to be used for transcribing messages. The historic style message contains references only to timing version names and does not specify any time units. The default is that messages contain references to both timing version names and model names. Timing values are in nanoseconds (ns). Use this switch if you want to match the Verilog-XL-specific SmartModel Library simulation conditions.
- +Imresstr** Disables mapping of SmartModel Library signal strengths to “strong” strength, even if a historic model *model.v* file (vshell) is detected. Use this switch if you want your historic-mode design to use true resistive strengths. This switch only works with the SWIFT interface.

# LMTV Commands

LMTV commands are predefined tasks that you place within your testbench or design. LMTV commands all begin with an `$lm_` prefix. Some of them have historic counterparts, which begin with an `$lai_` prefix. You can use any or all commands in either the SWIFT or the Historic SmartModel modes, except for the `$lm_monitor_vec_map()` command, which can be used only in SWIFT SmartModel mode.



---

**Note**

The `$lai_` commands are provided to support older designs. Therefore, you do not have to convert `$lai_` commands to `$lm_` commands. However, when starting a new design it is best to use the `$lm_` commands and not the `$lai_` commands.

---

Here is a list of the LMTV interface commands:

- “`$lm_command()` or `$lai_command()`” on page 284
- “`$lm_dump_file()` or `$lai_dump_file()`” on page 285
- “`$lm_help()`” on page 286
- “`$lm_load_file()` or `$lai_load_file()`” on page 287
- “`$lm_monitor_enable()` or `$lai_enable_monitor()`” on page 288
- “`$lm_monitor_disable()` or `$lai_disable_monitor()`” on page 288
- “`$lm_monitor_vec_map()` and `$lm_monitor_vec_unmap()`” on page 290
- “`$lm_status()` or `$lai_status()`” on page 292

## **\$lm\_command() or \$lai\_command()**

These commands provide access to the SWIFT command channel. You can use them to send a command to the session or to a model instance.

### **Syntax**

```
$lm_command ("session_cmmd_string");
```

```
$lm_command (inst_path, "model_cmmd_string");
```

```
$lai_command ("session_cmmd_string");
```

```
$lai_command (inst_path, "model_cmmd_string");
```

### **Arguments**

|                            |                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>session_cmmd_string</i> | The SWIFT interface command to be sent to the session.                                          |
| <i>inst_path</i>           | The path name to the SmartModel instance to send the command to. Used only with model commands. |
| <i>model_cmmd_string</i>   | The SWIFT interface command to be sent to the model instance.                                   |

For more information about the SWIFT command channel, refer to [“The SWIFT Command Channel” on page 21](#).

### **Examples**

The following example sends the ReportStatus command to the instance “U1”, causing it to generate a message reporting its configuration status.

```
% $lm_command ("U1", "ReportStatus");
```

The following example sends the TraceTimeFile off command to the session, causing it to stop issuing trace messages. Note that the absence of an instance name identifies the command as session-specific.

```
% $lm_command ("TraceTimeFile off")
```

## \$lm\_dump\_file() or \$lai\_dump\_file()

Use these commands to dump the memory contents of the instance *inst\_path* into the file *filename*. This works only for memory models. If the specified file already exists, it is overwritten. Using this command eliminates the read cycles required to verify the success of a test.

You can reload the dumped file into a memory model using the `$lm_load_file()` command. The format of the dumped file is the same as the Synopsys memory image file format required by a memory model at initialization.

### Syntax

```
$lm_dump_file (inst_path, "filename" [, "file_type"]);
```

```
$lai_dump_file (inst_path, "filename" [, "file_type"]);
```

### Arguments

|                  |                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>inst_path</i> | The path name to the SmartModel instance whose memory information is to be dumped.                                                                                                   |
| <i>filename</i>  | The path name to the file that is to receive the dumped memory information from the model instance.                                                                                  |
| <i>file_type</i> | The type of configuration file to be dumped. The only allowed value is MEMORY, which is also the default. This argument is provided for compatibility with the historic environment. |

## \$lm\_help()

Use this command to display the syntax for all of the SWIFT interface commands.

### Syntax

```
$lm_help();
```

### Examples

The following example shows the results of issuing the command \$lm\_help.

```
C2 > $lm_help;
```

```
LMTV commands:
```

```
lm_command("session_command"): execute a session command.
lm_command(inst_path, "model_command"):
 execute a model command.
lm_dump_file(inst_path, "file_name", ["file_type"]):
 dump memory into file.
lm_load_file(inst_path, ["file_name", "file_type"]):
 load file of programmable device or memory.
lm_monitor_enable(inst_path [, "win_element" [...]]):
 enable window Monitor.
lm_monitor_disable(inst_path [, "win_element" [...]]):
 disable window Monitor
lm_monitor_vec_map(var_name, inst_path, "win_element" [, index]):
 map window to a variable for monitoring.
lm_monitor_vec_unmap([var_name,] inst_path):
 unmap window to stop monitoring.
lm_status(inst_path): dump instance status.
```

```
Commands compatible with old release :
```

```
lai_enable_monitor("inst_path", [win_element],...):
 enable window Monitor.
lai_disable_monitor("inst_path", [win_element],...):
 disable window Monitor.
lai_dump_file("inst_path", "file_name", "file_type"):
 dump memory into file.
lai_load_file("inst_path", "file_name", "file_type"):
 load file of programmable device or memory.
lai_status("inst_path"): dump instance data.
```

## \$lm\_load\_file() or \$lai\_load\_file()

Use these commands to load the memory contents of the file *filename* into the instance *inst\_path*, which can be either a programmable device or a memory model. Using these commands eliminates the write cycles required to set up the contents of the model.

The *load\_file* operation causes the selected model to reset its internal state to simulation startup conditions and then read the specified file. After the file is read, the model is evaluated as a function of the new internal state and the current inputs and outputs are scheduled with zero delay. After this initial evaluation phase, the model behaves as it would normally.

You can load a model with any file type that would normally be accepted by the model at initialization. Additionally, the new configuration file you load is used for the specified model instance after any subsequent command to reset or reinitialize.

### Syntax

```
$lm_load_file (inst_path [, "filename", "file_type"]);
```

```
$lai_load_file (inst_path [, "filename", "file_type"]);
```

### Arguments

|                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>inst_path</i> | The path name to the SmartModel instance into which the contents of <i>filename</i> is to be loaded.                                                                                                            |
| <i>filename</i>  | The path name to the configuration file that is to be loaded for the model instance specified by <i>inst_path</i> . The default is to use a path name defined with the <i>defparam</i> statement in the design. |
| <i>file_type</i> | The type of file to be loaded. Allowed values are MEMORY, JEDEC, PCL, and SCF. The default is to use the file type of the file defined with the <i>defparam</i> statement in the design.                        |

## \$lm\_monitor\_enable() or \$lai\_enable\_monitor()

## \$lm\_monitor\_disable() or \$lai\_disable\_monitor()

Use these commands to enable or disable SmartModel Windows for one or more window elements of a model instance specified by *inst\_path*. The SmartModel Windows feature allows you to view and change the contents of a model's internal registers through predefined windows, which usually reflect the model's internal state. After enabling SmartModel Windows, you can read from the register using an appropriate Verilog command or by adding the path name to the list of signals being traced. If you attempt to read from an internal register without enabling SmartModel Windows the window content is not read.

The `$lm_monitor_enable()` and `$lm_monitor_disable()` commands are provided for compatibility with the historic environment. You cannot access arrays of registers, as in memory window elements, using these commands. In addition, you cannot create dynamic windows needed for SmartCircuit models if you define a window in a configuration file. The `$lm_monitor_vec_map()` and `$lm_monitor_vec_unmap()` commands provide these capabilities.



### Note

Accessing internal states is memory-intensive, so you may notice some performance degradation when SmartModel Windows is enabled.

### Syntax

```
$lm_monitor_enable (inst_path [, "window_element" [...]]);
```

```
$lm_monitor_disable (inst_path [, "window_element" [...]]);
```

```
$lai_enable_monitor (inst_path [, "window_element" [...]]);
```

```
$lai_disable_monitor (inst_path [, "window_element" [...]]);
```

### Arguments

*inst\_path*

The path name to the SmartModel instance for which SmartModel Windows is to be enabled.

*window\_element*

The name of the internal register to read. This can be a single value or a list. The default is to read all internal registers of the instance.

## Examples

The following example enables SmartModel Windows for all windows in instance “U1”, then reads from the predefined window element IENA. Notice that you must enable SmartModel Windows before attempting to read from the window element.

```
// somewhere in the testbench ...
// enable access to all windows in instance U1
$lm_monitor_enable(U1);
// display contents of window element IENA
$display("Value of register IENA is %h", $IENA);
```

The following example disables the window explicitly for the register IENA.

```
% $lm_monitor_disable(U1, "IENA");
```

The following example disables all windows in instance U1.

```
% $lm_monitor_disable(U1);
```

The following example does not read the register IENA, because SmartModel Windows was not enabled.

```
// somewhere in the testbench ...
$display("Value of register IENA is %h", $IENA);
```

## **\$lm\_monitor\_vec\_map() and \$lm\_monitor\_vec\_unmap()**

Use these commands to enable or disable direct mapping between the user-defined variable *var\_name* and a model instance's internal register *window\_element*. This mapping allows you to read from, write to, or trace the internal register through your user-defined variable. You must define this variable with a width corresponding to that of the predefined window somewhere in the design hierarchy (typically in the testbench) before using these commands. Note that these commands only work in SWIFT SmartModel mode.

Using `$lm_monitor_vec_map()`, you can access arrays of registers, which is useful for addressing specific memory locations, as in the memory window elements feature. In addition, `$lm_monitor_vec_map()` allows dynamic window creation. Thus, if a SmartCircuit model changes its configuration file so that more windows are created, you can add those names to your testbench, and enable tracing directly.

### **Syntax**

```
$lm_monitor_vec_map (var_name, inst_path, “window_element” [,index]);
```

```
$lm_monitor_vec_unmap ([var_name,] inst_path);
```

### **Arguments**

|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>var_name</i>       | The name of a user-defined variable to map to <i>window_element</i> . The variable must be already defined somewhere in the design hierarchy. The default for <code>\$lm_monitor_vec_unmap()</code> is to unmap all mapped variables for that instance. |
| <i>inst_path</i>      | The path name to the SmartModel instance whose internal register is to be mapped to the user-defined variable <i>var_name</i> .                                                                                                                         |
| <i>window_element</i> | The name of the internal register to be mapped to <i>var_name</i> . Can be part of an array.                                                                                                                                                            |
| <i>index</i>          | The index of the array, if the window element is a memory window. The default is 0.                                                                                                                                                                     |

### **Examples**

The following example defines three variables and maps them to specific memory locations in the memory array UMEM for memory model instance “U1”. Note that these tasks cannot be performed using `$lm_monitor_enable()`. Although the example features an array of registers, the tasks are equally useful for scalar windows, where you can omit the index option or set it to 0.

```
// Assume a 4Kx8 memory model, on a controller board.
// Such a model would typically have one window called UMEM.
// This window is a 4K deep array of 8 bit registers. In
// particular, the user is interested in these 3 locations:
// Interrupt service routine, LOW ADDRESS: 100
// Interrupt service routine, HIGH ADDRESS: 101
// Control store : 200
// that are significant to the design.
reg [7:0] ISR_LOW; // variable to map to location 100
reg [7:0] ISR_HIGH; // variable to map to location 101
reg [7:0] CONTROL; // variable to map to location 200
// enable monitoring of these variables
$lm_monitor_vec_map(ISR_LOW, U1, "UMEM", 100);
$lm_monitor_vec_map(ISR_HIGH, U1, "UMEM", 101);
$lm_monitor_vec_map(CONTROL, U1, "UMEM", 200);

// ... at this time, you can read, write, or trace these
// variables. For example, assign the address of the interrupt
// service routine to be 0x5000

ISR_LOW = 0x00 ;
ISR_HIGH = 0x50 ;

// or the same assignment can be done as follows:
define ISR {ISR_HIGH,ISR_LOW}
ISR = 16h5000 ;
// this one statement will access two different
// and independent memory locations at once.
// later in the simulation, you can disable monitoring
// for the 'CONTROL' register:
$lm_monitor_vec_unmap(CONTROL, U1);
// or you can disable monitoring of all windows in that instance:
$lm_monitor_vec_unmap(U1);
```

## **\$lm\_status() or \$lai\_status()**

Use these commands to report the current status of the model instance *inst\_path*. The report includes the names and values of internal windows.

### **Syntax**

**\$lm\_status** (*inst\_path*)

**\$lai\_status** (*inst\_path*);

### **Arguments**

*inst\_path*

The path name to the SmartModel instance whose status is to be reported.

### **Examples**

The following example shows the output of the \$lm\_status() command for model instance "U1".

```
C1 > $lm_status(U1);
```

```
Note: <>
```

```
Model template: mem
```

```
Version: not available
```

```
InstanceName: DESIGN.U1
```

```
TimingVersion: MEM-0
```

```
DelayRange: MAX
```

```
MemoryFile: memory.1
```

```
Timing Constraints: On
```

```
SmartModel Instance DESIGN.U1(mem:MEM-0), at time 1000.0 ns
```

```
Note: SmartModel Windows Description:
```

```
UMEM[2048] "2K x 8 Static RAM":
```

```
SmartModel Windows not enabled for this model.
```

```
SmartModel Instance DESIGN.U1(mem:MEM-0), at time 1000.0 ns
```

# Index

## Symbols

[\\$add\\_instance](#) command [229](#), [230](#)  
[\\$display](#) command [73](#)  
[\\$lai\\_command](#) command [284](#)  
[\\$lai\\_disable\\_monitor](#) command [69](#), [288](#)  
[\\$lai\\_dump\\_file](#) command [285](#)  
[\\$lai\\_enable\\_monitor](#) command [69](#), [71](#), [72](#),  
[288](#)  
[\\$lai\\_load\\_file](#) command [287](#)  
[\\$lai\\_status](#) command [69](#), [71](#), [292](#)  
[\\$lm\\_command](#) command [284](#)  
[\\$lm\\_dump\\_file](#) command [285](#)  
[\\$lm\\_help](#) command [286](#)  
[\\$lm\\_load\\_file](#) command [287](#)  
[\\$lm\\_log\\_test\\_vectors](#) [96](#)  
[\\$lm\\_loop\\_instance](#) [97](#)  
[\\$lm\\_monitor\\_disable](#) command [69](#), [288](#)  
[\\$lm\\_monitor\\_enable](#) command [69](#), [70](#), [71](#),  
[72](#), [288](#)  
[\\$lm\\_monitor\\_vec\\_map](#) command [69](#), [70](#),  
[73](#), [290](#)  
[\\$lm\\_monitor\\_vec\\_unmap](#) command [69](#),  
[290](#)  
[\\$lm\\_status](#) command [69](#), [71](#), [292](#)  
[\\$lm\\_timing\\_information](#) [98](#)  
[\\$lm\\_timing\\_measurements](#) [98](#)  
[\\$lm\\_unknowns](#) [99](#)  
[+vera\\_finish\\_on\\_end](#) switch [277](#)

## A

[add breakpoint](#) command [238](#)  
[add bus](#) command [239](#)  
[add lists](#) command [237](#), [239](#)  
[add monitors](#) command [237](#)  
[add primitive](#) command [230](#)  
[add synonym](#) command [239](#)  
[add traces](#) command [237](#)  
[Admin tool](#) [222](#)  
[AIX](#)

[compiling C files](#) [28](#)

[AMPLE\\_PATH](#) environment variable [222](#)

[Analysis tools](#)

[Mentor Graphics](#) [249](#)

[rules to determine descriptors](#) [250](#)

[ANSI C compiler](#)

[with Cyclone](#) [193](#)

[Attributes](#)

[SmartModel](#) [18](#)

## B

[Breakpoints](#)

[setting with SmartModels](#) [238](#)

[Bus symbols](#)

[SmartModel](#) [224](#)

[Buses](#)

[renaming with hardware models](#) [194](#)

## C

[C compiler](#) [193](#)

[ccn\\_report](#) command [70](#)

[cds.lib](#) file [202](#), [213](#)

[cds.lib](#) path [210](#)

[CDS\\_INST\\_DIR](#) environment variable  
[104](#)

[CDS\\_VHDL](#) environment variable [198](#)

[cflags](#) [193](#)

[Characters, mapping](#) [194](#)

[Characters, replacing special](#) [194](#)

[Check Shell Software utility](#) [254](#)

[Command Channel](#)

[SWIFT](#) [233](#)

[Command interaction](#)

[QuickSim II](#) [233](#)

[Command line](#)

[switches, LMTV](#) [76](#)

[switches, QuickSim II](#) [232](#)

[Commands](#)

[\\$add\\_instance](#) [229](#), [230](#)

- \$display 73
- \$lai\_command 284
- \$lai\_disable\_monitor 69, 288
- \$lai\_dump\_file 285
- \$lai\_enable\_monitor 69, 71, 72, 288
- \$lai\_load\_file 287
- \$lai\_status 69, 71, 292
- \$lm\_command 284
- \$lm\_dump\_file 285
- \$lm\_help 286
- \$lm\_load\_file 287
- \$lm\_log\_test\_vectors 96
- \$lm\_loop\_instance 97
- \$lm\_monitor\_disable 69, 288
- \$lm\_monitor\_enable 69, 70, 71, 72, 288
- \$lm\_monitor\_vec\_map 69, 70, 73, 290
- \$lm\_monitor\_vec\_unmap 69, 290
- \$lm\_status 69, 71, 292
- \$lm\_timing\_information 98
- \$lm\_timing\_measurements 98
- \$lm\_unknowns 99
- add breakpoint 238
- add bus 239
- add lists 237, 239
- add monitors 237
- add primitive 230
- add synonym 239
- add traces 237
- ccn\_report 70
- command channel 21
- create\_smartmodel\_lib 128, 147
- cyan 175
- cysim 176
- flexm\_setup 25
- force 238
- genInterface 188
- lm\_disable\_timing\_checks 204, 216
- lm\_enable\_timing\_checks 204, 216
- lm\_log\_test\_vectors 204
- lm\_loop\_instance 205, 216
- lm\_model 249, 251, 252, 254, 255, 257, 258
- lm\_model, syntax 266
- lm\_pam\_shortage 205, 216
- lm\_pattern\_history 205, 216
- lm\_timing\_measurements 204, 216
- lm\_unknowns 204, 216
- lm\_vconfig 101
- lmc\_swift\_templates 39, 41
- lmsi list 138
- lmsi logon 138
- lmsvg 101
- LMTV 281
- LMTV SmartModel windows 69
- lmvc\_template 54
- ncelab 212
- ncshell 208
- ncsim 209
- ncverilog 111
- ncvhdl 209
- nologvectors signal instance 263
- propagation 261
- reg\_model 242, 251, 258
- reread modelfile 241
- restore state 240
- save state 240
- scsim 136
- signal instance 233, 258, 263, 264, 266
- simv 280
- sm\_entity 159, 162
- tmg\_to\_ts 251
- tmg\_to\_ts, syntax 269
- unknown handling 261
- vcom 161, 164
- VERA 277
- vhdlan 131, 136
- vhdlsim 149
- vlib 161
- vsim 161, 165
- Comments
  - submitting 16
- COMP property 227
- Compiling C files
  - AIX 28
  - HP-UX 28
  - Linux 29
  - NT 29
  - Solaris 28

Component interface [251](#)  
 Component registration [242](#)  
 Concept  
   procedure [68](#)  
 Constraint mode switch [232](#)  
 Conversions  
   shell software [256](#)  
   technology file [256](#)  
 Converter  
   tmg\_to\_ts [251](#)  
 create\_smartmodel\_lib command [128](#), [147](#)  
 Custom symbols [241](#)  
   mapping [243](#)  
 cyan command [175](#)  
 Cyclone  
   elaboration warnings with hardware  
     models [191](#)  
   setup options with hardware models [192](#)  
   with FlexMocdels [175](#)  
   with MemPro models [175](#)  
   with SmartModels [175](#)  
 cylab, -4-state in [191](#)  
 cysim command [176](#)  
 cysim, -4 state in [191](#)

## D

-debug\_all switch [136](#)  
 Declarations, variable [255](#)  
 defparam statement  
   with hardware models [90](#)  
 Delay files [255](#)  
 DelayRange [24](#)  
 Delays, propagation [255](#)  
 Descriptions  
   functional [249](#), [251](#)  
   graphical [249](#), [251](#)  
   technology [251](#)  
   timing [251](#)  
 Descriptors, determining for hardware  
   models [250](#)  
 Design  
   capture, Verilog-XL [66](#)  
   flow, Verilog-XL [65](#)

Design Architect  
   SmartModel library menus to [222](#)  
   with SmartModels [222](#)  
 Design Architect menus  
   building designs with SmartModels [227](#)  
   levels [228](#)  
   system [228](#)  
 Design environment, MGC [249](#)  
 Designs  
   building, using menus [227](#)  
   building, without menus [229](#)  
 Direct C Control  
   compiling C files [28](#)  
   with FlexModels [26](#)  
 -DLM\_HW\_DEBUG flag [193](#)  
 -DLM\_HW\_PIN\_DEBUG flag [193](#)  
 Drive strengths [231](#)

## E

Environment variables  
   AMPLE\_PATH [222](#)  
   CDS\_INST\_DIR [104](#)  
   CDS\_VHDL [198](#)  
   LAI\_LIB [76](#)  
   LAI\_OBJ [76](#)  
   LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH [38](#), [39](#), [60](#), [61](#),  
     [104](#), [114](#), [127](#), [144](#), [158](#), [174](#),  
     [198](#), [208](#), [220](#)  
   LM\_DIR [38](#), [60](#), [114](#), [144](#), [158](#), [198](#)  
   LM\_LIB [38](#), [60](#), [114](#), [144](#), [158](#), [198](#)  
   LM\_LICENSE\_FILE [38](#), [60](#), [104](#), [114](#),  
     [126](#), [144](#), [157](#), [173](#), [198](#), [207](#), [219](#)  
   LM\_OPTION [91](#), [190](#)  
   LMC\_HOME [38](#), [59](#), [76](#)  
   LMC\_PATH [76](#)  
   LMC\_SFI [54](#)  
   LMC\_TIMEUNIT [209](#)  
   LMC\_VLOG [76](#)  
   MA\_CY [181](#)  
   setting for LMTV [76](#)  
   SHLIB\_PATH [39](#), [61](#), [105](#), [114](#), [127](#),  
     [144](#), [158](#), [174](#), [198](#), [208](#), [220](#)  
   SNPSLMD\_LICENSE\_FILE [38](#), [60](#),  
     [104](#), [114](#), [126](#), [144](#), [157](#), [173](#),  
     [198](#), [207](#), [219](#)

- SSI\_LIB\_FILES 279
  - SYNOPSYS 143
  - SYNOPSYS\_SIM 126, 143
  - VCS\_HOME 39, 41
  - VCS\_LMC 54
  - VCS\_LMC\_HM\_ARCH 54
  - VCS\_SWIFT\_NOTES 39
  - Error message "Keys do not match" 191
  - Errors
    - messages 235
    - registration 254
  - Evaluation
    - hardware models in QucikSim II 260
  - Examples
    - FlexModel VHDL instantiation 43, 79, 107, 117, 131, 149, 164
    - FlexModels with VCS 45
- F**
- Fault simulation
    - with SmartModels 23
  - Files
    - cds.lib 202, 210, 213
    - delay (.DLY) 255
    - force value (.FRC) 255
    - lfsmLibPck 199
    - lmtv.o 62, 80, 106, 108, 116, 119
    - mapping, pin 243
    - MCF 232
    - model.vhd 107, 117, 163
    - model\_fx\_comp.vhd 163
    - model\_fx\_sim.vhd 106, 116, 163
    - model\_tst.vhd 107, 117, 163
    - modelsim.ini 159, 164
    - ncshell 210
    - ncsim 212
    - pin\_map 243
    - pin\_map, example 244
    - SMILibrary.vhd 199
    - SMLibrary.vhd 209
    - SMpackage.vhd 199
    - state tracking (.TRK) 255
    - synopsys\_vss.setiup 131
    - technology 251, 255, 266
    - technology, types 255
    - timing 253
    - timing check (.TCK) 255
    - variable declaration (.DCL) 255
    - veriusser.c 62, 80, 106, 108, 116, 119
    - vhdlsim 150
    - vsystem.ini 164
  - FlexCFile 25
  - flexm\_setup 25, 27
  - FlexModel
    - attributes 19
    - examples with VCS 45
    - fault simulation 23
  - FlexModel SWIFT parameters 24
  - FlexModelId 24
  - FlexModels
    - dynamic linking with PLI 106, 116
    - example isatiations 209, 211
    - model.vhd 78
    - model\_fx\_sim.vhd 78
    - model\_pkg.inc 78
    - model\_tst.vhd 78
    - PLI static linking 80, 108, 119
    - using with MTI VHDL 162
    - VHDL instantiation 209, 211
    - with Cyclone 175
    - with Leapfrog 175, 200
    - with MTI-Verilog 116
    - with NC-VHDL 210
    - with Scirocco 129
    - with VCS 41
    - with VERA 271
    - with VSS 147
  - FlexModelSrc 25
  - FlexTimingMode 24
  - FMI library 200, 212
  - Force command 238
  - Force values file 255
- G**
- geniInterface command 188
  - genInterface
    - deleting intermediate files 186
    - example 190

- examples [189](#)
- how it works [181](#)
- options per model [187](#)
- overwriting files [187](#)
- overwriting pin names per model [188](#)
- processing [193](#)
- running [188](#)
- syntax [188](#)
- Getting help [14](#)
- Graphical descriptions [251](#)

## H

- Hardware model functional descriptions with QuickSim II [251](#)
- Hardware models
  - dynamic linking with PLI [91](#), [111](#), [120](#)
  - elaborating and simulating design [190](#)
  - functional descriptions with QuickSim II [249](#)
  - installation prerequisites [180](#)
  - instantiating [90](#)
  - instantiating in Verilog-XL [90](#)
  - keyword replacement [195](#)
  - linking simulators [35](#)
  - linking with SFI [35](#)
  - loop mode [264](#)
  - modifying [257](#)
  - performance monitoring [91](#), [190](#), [261](#), [265](#), [266](#)
  - propagation delays [255](#)
  - registering [251](#), [252](#)
  - registration [251](#)
  - rules for determining descriptors [250](#)
  - script for Scirocco [140](#)
  - SFI [87](#)
  - shell timing [260](#)
  - test vector symbols [95](#)
  - timing
    - measurement [263](#)
  - timing checks [255](#)
  - timing checks with Cyclone [184](#)
  - timing delays with Cyclone [184](#)
  - understanding test vector files [95](#)
  - unknown propagation [262](#)
  - variable declarations [255](#)

- verilog.log file example [92](#)
- with Cyclone [185](#)
- with IKOS Voyager [36](#)
- with Leapfrog [203](#)
- with MTI Verilog [120](#)
- with MTI VHDL [167](#)
- with NC-Verilog [111](#)
- with QuickSim II [249](#), [258](#)
- with Scirocco [137](#)
- with Teradyne LASAR [36](#)
- with VEDA Vulcan [36](#)
- with ViewLogic Fusion [36](#)

- HP-UX
  - compiling C files [28](#)

## I

- Iflags [193](#)
- IKOS Voyager [36](#)
  - with hardware models [36](#)
- Indeterminate strength mapping [263](#)
- Information, signal instance [265](#)
- Installation prerequisites
  - hardware model [180](#)
- Instantiation
  - FlexModel VHDL [40](#), [43](#), [61](#), [79](#), [105](#), [107](#), [115](#), [117](#), [131](#), [149](#), [164](#)
- Instruction
  - tracing, execution [238](#)
- Intel NT
  - using MTI Verilog [116](#)
  - using MTI VHDL [162](#)
- Interfaces
  - hardware model component [251](#)

**J**

JEDECFile property [226](#)

**K**

Keys do not match, error message [191](#)

**L**

LAI\_LIB environment variable [76](#)

LAI\_OBJ environment variable [76](#)

ld linker [193](#)

LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH environment variable [38](#), [39](#), [60](#), [61](#), [104](#), [114](#), [127](#), [144](#), [158](#), [174](#), [191](#), [198](#), [208](#), [220](#)

-LDFLAGS -E switch [279](#)

Leapfrog

with FlexModels [175](#), [200](#)

with hardware models [203](#)

with MemPro [200](#), [212](#)

Leapfrog utilities

with hardware models [204](#)

lfsmLibPck file [199](#)

Libraries

CLI functions [148](#)

FMI [200](#), [212](#)

model\_pkg.inc [42](#), [116](#)

model\_pkg.o [27](#)

model\_pkg.vhd [163](#)

model\_pkg.vr [276](#)

model\_pkg.vrh [276](#)

model\_user\_pkg.vhd [163](#)

slm\_lib [131](#), [149](#), [164](#), [212](#)

slm\_pli.o [27](#)

slm\_pli\_dyn [80](#), [108](#), [119](#)

SmartModel Library menus [222](#)

SmartModel, LMTV/SWIFT [75](#)

SmartModel, Verilog-XL [75](#)

SMpackage.vhd [209](#)

swiftpli [61](#), [78](#), [79](#), [105](#), [106](#), [108](#), [115](#), [116](#)

vera\_local\_dll [278](#)

LIBRARY statement [131](#), [149](#), [164](#), [209](#), [211](#)

license file settings

ModelSource [183](#)

linker [193](#)

Linux

compiling C files [29](#)

with MemPro [165](#)

LM\_DIR environment variable [38](#), [60](#), [114](#), [144](#), [158](#), [198](#)

lm\_disable\_timing\_checks command [204](#), [216](#)

lm\_enable\_timing\_checks command [204](#), [216](#)

LM\_LIB environment variable [38](#), [60](#), [114](#), [144](#), [158](#), [198](#)

LM\_LICENSE\_FILE environment variable [38](#), [60](#), [104](#), [114](#), [126](#), [144](#), [157](#), [173](#), [198](#), [207](#), [219](#)

lm\_log\_test\_vectors command [204](#)

lm\_loop\_instance command [205](#), [216](#)

lm\_model command [249](#), [251](#), [252](#), [254](#), [255](#), [257](#), [258](#), [266](#)

lm\_model symbol generation [255](#)

LM\_OPTION environment variable [91](#), [190](#)

lm\_pam\_shortage command [205](#), [216](#)

lm\_pattern\_history command [205](#), [216](#)

lm\_timing\_measurements command [204](#), [216](#)

lm\_unknowns command [204](#), [216](#)

lm\_vconfig command [101](#)

LM-1200 [177](#)

LM-1400 [177](#)

LMC\_COMMAND

setting SWIFT session commands [22](#)

LMC\_HOME environment variable [38, 59, 76, 103, 113, 126, 143, 157, 173, 197, 207, 219](#)

LMC\_PATH environment variable [76](#)

LMC\_SFI environment variable [54](#)

LMC\_TIMEUNIT environment variable [209](#)

LMC\_VLOG environment variable [76](#)

LMC\_VLOG environment variables [76](#)

lmc-swift-template command [39, 41](#)

lmmsi logon command [138](#)

lmsi list command [138](#)

LMSI\_DELAY\_TYPE VHDL generic [139, 154](#)

LMSI\_LOG VHDL generic [139, 154](#)

LMSI\_TIMING\_MEASUREMENT VHDL generic [138, 154](#)

LMTV

- command reference [281](#)
- command-line switches [76, 281](#)
- historic SmartModel mode for Verilog-XL [63](#)
- modes of operation for Verilog-XL [62](#)
- simulating older designs with Verilog-XL [75](#)
- static linking with PLI [62, 80, 85, 108, 119](#)
- SWIFT SmartModel mode with Verilog-XL [62](#)

lmvc\_template command [54](#)

lmvsg command [86](#)

lmvsg commnd [101](#)

Location maps

- variables, Mentor Graphics [222](#)

Logging test vectors [263](#)

Logic simulation [230](#)

- with SmartModels [230](#)

Loop mode, with hardware models in QuickSim II [264](#)

## M

MA\_CY environment variable [181](#)

ma\_cyclone software tree [180](#)

Manual overview [11](#)

Mapping

- indeterminate strength [263](#)
- pin [243](#)
- PIN\_NAME [242](#)
- pins, conditional [245](#)
- rules for special characters [194](#)
- unknowns [261](#)

MCF file [232](#)

- with SmartModels [232](#)

Measurement, timing [263](#)

MemoryFile property [225](#)

MemPro

- with NC-VHDL [212](#)

MemPro models

- controlling message output [34](#)
- dynamic linking with PLI [80, 109, 119](#)
- error messages [33](#)
- fatal messages [33](#)
- generics [29](#)
- info messages [33](#)
- instantiating [32](#)
- message level constants [34](#)
- parameters [29](#)
- PLI static linking [85](#)
- timing messages [33](#)
- using in testbench [136](#)
- using with simulators [29](#)
- Verilog-XL dynamic linking [83](#)
- warning messages [33](#)
- with Cyclone [175](#)
- with Leapfrog [200, 212](#)
- with MTI Verilog [119](#)
- with MTI VHDL [165](#)
- with NC-Verilog [109](#)
- with Scirocco [134](#)
- with VCS [50](#)
- with Verilog-XL [80](#)

- with VSS 150
  - X-handling messages 33
  - Mentor Graphics
    - analysis tools 249
    - design environment 249
    - location map variables 222
    - user tree management 221
  - Messages
    - constants, level with MemPro 34
    - controlling output with MemPro 34
    - MemPro error 33
    - MemPro fatal 33
    - MemPro info 33
    - MemPro timing 33
    - MemPro warning 33
    - MemPro X-handling 33
    - SmartModel error 235
    - SmartModel format 235
    - SmartModel note 235
    - SmartModel trace 235
    - SmartModel warning 235
  - MGC component interface 249
  - Model Access
    - Cyclone configuration options 177
  - Model directory 14
  - Model files
    - model\_fx\_sim.vhd 163
  - MODEL property 226
  - model.v files generated by crshell 88
  - model.v files, generating 86
  - model.vhd 117, 163
  - model.vhd file 107
  - model\_fx\_comp.vhd 163
  - model\_fx\_sim.vhd 116, 163
  - model\_fx\_sim.vhd file 106
  - model\_pkg.o 27
  - model\_pkg.vhd 163
  - model\_tst.vhd 117, 163
  - model\_tst.vhd file 107
  - model\_user\_pkg.vhd 163
  - ModelAccess
    - for Cyclone 176
    - for QuickSim II 246
    - for Verilog 87
  - ModelAccess for Cyclone
    - version number 176
  - ModelAccess for QuickSim II
    - version number 246
  - ModelAccess for Verilog
    - version number 92
  - modelsim.ini file 159, 164
  - ModelSource
    - license file settings 183
    - system hardware and software 177
  - MS-3200 177
  - MS-3400 177
  - MTI Verilog
    - simulating using LMTV 115
    - with FlexModels 116
    - with Hardware models 120
    - with MemPro models 119
  - MTI VHDL
    - with FlexModels 162
    - with hardware models 167
    - with MemPro models 165
    - with SmartModels 159, 199
- N**
- ncshell command 208
  - ncshell file 210
  - ncsim command 209
  - ncsim file 212
  - NC-Verilog
    - simulating with LMTV 105
    - with hardware models 111
    - with MemPro models 109
    - with SmartModels 105
  - ncoverilog command 111
  - NC-VHDL
    - with FlexModels 210
    - with MemPro 212
    - with SmartModels 208
  - ncvhd command 209
  - nologvectors signal instance command 263
  - NT
    - compiling C files 29

**P**

## Parameters

- also called attributes 18
- DelayRange 24
- FlexCFile 25
- FlexModelId 24
- FlexModelSrc 25
- FlexTimingMode 24
- TimingVersion 24
- PCLFile property 226
- pin names, overwriting by genInterface 188
- PIN property 226, 242
- Pin symbols 224
- pin\_map file 243
  - example 244
- PIN\_NAME mapping 242
- PIN\_NAME property 227, 242
- pin\_name\_ovr statement 188
- PIN\_NO property 227
- Pins
  - mapping 243
  - mapping, conditional 245
- PINTYPE property 226
- PKG property 227
- PLI
  - communication with Simulator Function Interface (SFI) 87
  - dynamic linking with FlexModels 116
  - dynamic linking with Hardware models 111
  - dynamic linking with MemPro models 109, 119
  - dynamic linking with SmartModels 61, 115
  - static linking with FlexModels 108, 119
  - static linking with SmartModels 62, 116
- PLIWizard 62, 80, 106, 108
- Properties
  - COMP 227
  - editing 235
  - JEDECFile 226
  - MemoryFile 225
  - MODEL 226, 249
  - PCLFile 226

- PIN 226, 242
- PIN\_NAME 227, 242
- PIN\_NO 227
- PINTYPE 226
- PKG 227
- REF 227
- SCFFile 226
- SWIFT 241
- SWIFT\_TEMPLATE 226
- symbol 224
- symbol, required for simulation 226
- TimingVersion 225
- propagation command 261

**Q**

## QuickSim II

- changing timing 235
- command interaction 233
- command line switches 232
- component interface 249
- constraint checking 235
- constraint, switch 232
- default timing 231
- installing SWIFT interface 221
- interactive commands 233
- managing user trees 221
- model symbol properties 226
- simulating logic models 258
- SmartModel windows with 237
- SWIFT interface 221
- time\_scale switch 232
- timing,switch 232
- with hardware models 249

**R**

## Reconfiguration

- models, for simulation 234
- REF property 227
- reg\_model command 242, 251, 258
- Register elements
  - combining with SmartModels 239
- Registration 258
  - component 242
  - errors, dealing with 254

- hardware models [251](#)
- logic models [251](#), [252](#)
- models [251](#)
- Registration tools, reference [266](#)
- Related documents [11](#)
- reread modelfile command [241](#)
- restore state command [240](#)
- run\_flex\_examples\_in\_scirocco.pl [132](#)
- run\_flex\_examples\_in\_vcs.pl Script [50](#)
- running verifySetup [181](#)

## S

- save state command [240](#)
- SCFFile property [226](#)
- Schematic capture
  - adding SmartModel to schematic [223](#)
- Schematic Editor
  - creating instances [229](#), [230](#)
- Scirocco
  - hardware model utilities [138](#)
  - script for hardware models [140](#)
  - VHDL generics [138](#)
  - with FlexModels [129](#)
  - with hardware models [137](#)
  - with MemPro models [134](#)
  - with SmartModels [127](#)
- Scripts
  - run\_flex\_examples\_in\_scirocco.pl [132](#)
  - run\_flex\_examples\_in\_vcs.pl [50](#)
- scsim command [136](#)
- Selection, timing shell [260](#)
- Session, ending the simulation [266](#)
- setup file, editing [186](#)
- SFI
  - linking hardware models [35](#)
- SFI. see Simulator Function Interface
- Shell Software
  - conversion to VHDL [195](#)
  - names [195](#)
- Shell Software Cconversions with
  - hardware models [256](#)
- Shell, timing
  - with hardware models [260](#)

- SHLIB\_PATH environment variable [39](#), [61](#), [105](#), [114](#), [127](#), [144](#), [158](#), [174](#), [198](#), [208](#), [220](#)
- signal instance command [233](#), [258](#), [263](#), [264](#), [266](#)
- signal renaming, rules [194](#)
- Signal strength
  - with SmartModels [76](#)
- Simulation session, ending [266](#)
- Simulations
  - fault [23](#)
  - reconfiguring models for [234](#)
  - single-step [238](#)
- Simulator Function Interface (SFI) [87](#)
  - version number [92](#)
- Simulator integration
  - Cyclone [175](#)
  - Leapfrog [200](#), [212](#)
  - ModelSim [162](#)
  - ModelSim VHDL [165](#)
  - MTI VHDL [162](#)
  - V-System 5.0 [162](#)
- simv command [280](#)
- Slang hardware model [185](#)
- Slang interface [185](#)
- sm\_entity command [159](#), [162](#)
- SmartCircuit models
  - Models
    - SmartCircuit [209](#)
- SmartCircuit models
  - with SWIFT Cxmmmand Channel [21](#)
- SmartModel Library
  - documentation [11](#)
  - fault simulation [23](#)
  - message formats [235](#)
- SmartModel Windows
  - in SWIFT SmartModel mode [71](#)
  - in Verilog-XL historic mode [70](#)
- SmartModel windows
  - elements [240](#)
  - how they work [237](#)
  - LMTV, commands [69](#)
  - tracing instruction execution [238](#)
  - with QuickSim II [237](#)

- with Verilog-XL 69
- SmartModels
  - adding to schematic 223
  - attributes, required 19
  - changing program flow 240
  - changing program flows 240
  - changing timescale 75
  - creating instances in QuickSim 229
  - customizing timing 75
  - drive strengths 231
  - dynamic linking with PLI 61, 105, 115
  - editing properties 235
  - evaluation 260
  - fault simulation 23
  - functional descriptions in Quickim II 249
  - graphical descriptions with QuickSim II 249
  - instantiating 20
  - library menus, to Design Architect 222
  - LMTV/SWIFT libraries 75
  - logic simulation 230
  - message format 235
  - message formats 235
  - pin and bus symbols 224
  - PLI static linking 62, 106, 116
  - reconfiguring for simulation 234
  - renaming instances in QuickSIM 239
  - signal levels 231
  - status checking 234
  - support levels 231
  - SWIFT usage notes for MGC users 223
  - symbol properties used by SWIFT 225
  - symbols, creating new 241
  - symbols, modifying 241
  - technology descriptions with QuickSim II 249
  - timing constraint checks 235
  - trace messages 235
  - user-defined window elements 69
  - using with SWIFT simulators 18
  - Verilog-XL libraries 75
  - warning messages 235
  - Windows, SWIFT mode 71
  - with Cyclone 175
  - with MTI VHDL 159, 199
  - with NC-Verilog 105
  - with NC-VHDL 208
  - with Scirocco 127
  - with VCS 39
  - with Verilog-XL 61, 62
  - with VSS 145
- SMILibrary.vhd file 199
- SMLibrary.vhd 209
- SMpackage.vhd 209
- SMpackage.vhd file 199
- SNPSLMD\_LICENSE\_FILE environment variable 38, 60, 104, 114, 126, 144, 157, 173, 198, 207, 219
- Solaris
  - compiling C files 28
- SOLV-IT! 15
- Special characters
  - mapping rules 194
  - replacing 194
- SSI\_LIB\_FILES environment variable 279
- State tracking 255
- Statements
  - technology file 255
- SunOS, changing global settings on 186
- Support center
  - contacting 14
- Support levels
  - SmartModels 231
- SWIFT 17
- SWIFT Command Channel 21, 233
- SWIFT interface
  - properties 241
  - QuickSim II, installing 221
  - symbol properties 224
  - usage notes for MGC users 223
- SWIFT parameters
  - with FlexModels 24
  - with SmartModels 18
- SWIFT\_TEMPLATE property 226
- swiftpli 61, 78, 79, 105, 106, 108, 115, 116
- Switches
  - +vera\_finish\_on\_end 277
  - command line, QuickSim II 232

- constraint mode [232](#)
- debug\_all [136](#)
- LDFLAGS -E. [279](#)
- time scale [232](#)
- timing mode [232](#)
- VCS -Zp4 [52](#)
- Symbol properties
  - required for simulation [226](#)
- Symbols [223](#), [258](#)
  - alternate, selecting [230](#)
  - buses [224](#)
  - creation [251](#)
  - custom [241](#)
  - editing [255](#)
  - pins [224](#)
  - properties [224](#)
  - registration [251](#)
  - rules for creating [255](#)
  - SmartModel, creating new [241](#)
  - SmartModel, modifying [241](#)
- SYNOPSIS environment variable [143](#)
- synopsys\_lm\_hw.setup file [186](#)
- synopsys\_lm\_hw.setup.sunos file [186](#)
- SYNOPSIS\_SIM environment variable [126](#), [143](#)
- synopsys\_vss.setup file [131](#), [149](#)

## T

- Technology descriptions [251](#)
- Technology files [251](#), [255](#), [266](#)
  - conversions [256](#)
  - types [255](#)
- Teradyne LASAR
  - with hardware models [36](#)
- Test vector logging [263](#)
- Test vector logging, hardware model
  - example [93](#)
- Timescale
  - changing with SmartModels [75](#)
  - switch with SmartModels [232](#)
- Timing checks
  - with hardware models [255](#)

- Timing descriptions [251](#)
- Timing files [253](#)
- Timing measurement
  - with hardware models [93](#)
- Timing modes
  - changing [235](#)
  - default [231](#)
  - switch [232](#)
- Timing shell selection [260](#)
- TimingVersion [24](#)
- TimingVersion property [225](#)
- tmg\_to\_ts command [269](#)
- tmg\_to\_ts converter [251](#)
- Tools
  - Admin [222](#)
  - analysis, Mentor Graphics [249](#)
  - flexm\_setup [25](#), [27](#)
  - lm\_model [249](#), [251](#), [252](#), [254](#), [255](#), [257](#), [258](#)
  - lm\_model, syntax [266](#)
  - reg\_model [242](#), [251](#), [258](#)
  - registration, reference [266](#)
  - tmg\_to\_ts [251](#)
  - tmg\_to\_ts, syntax [269](#)
- Tracing
  - instruction, execution [238](#)
- Tracking, state [255](#)
- Transcript, registration - checking [254](#)
- Trees
  - management, Mentor Graphics [221](#)
- Triggering
  - word, setting [238](#)
- Typographical conventions [13](#)

## U

- Unknown mapping
  - with hardware models [261](#)
- Unknown propagation
  - with hardware models [262](#)
- USE statement [131](#), [149](#), [164](#), [209](#), [211](#)
- Using [85](#)
- Using FlexModels
  - with Direct C Control [26](#)

- with SWIFT simulators [26](#)
- Using MemPro models
  - with Verilog simulators [31](#)
  - with VHDL simulators [31](#)
- Utilities
  - called by lm\_model command [251](#)
  - Check Shell Software [254](#)
  - lm\_model [249](#), [251](#), [252](#), [254](#), [255](#), [257](#), [258](#)

## V

- Variables
  - location map, Mentor Graphics [222](#)
- vcom command [161](#), [164](#)
- VCS
  - FlexModel examples run script [48](#)
  - invoking on AIX [40](#)
  - invoking on HP-UX [40](#)
  - invoking on Linux [40](#)
  - invoking on Solaris [40](#)
  - with FlexModels [41](#)
  - with MemPro models [50](#)
  - with SmartModels [39](#)
  - with VERA [277](#)
- VCS utilities
  - with hardware models [56](#)
- VCS\_HOME environment variable [39](#), [41](#)
- VCS\_LMC environment variable [54](#)
- VCS\_LMC\_HM\_ARCH environment variable [54](#)
- VCS\_SWIFT\_NOTES environment variable [39](#)
- Vectors, test, logging [263](#)
- VEDA Vulcan
  - with hardware models [36](#)
- VERA
  - compiling source files [276](#)
  - compiling testbench [277](#)
  - testbench creation [273](#)
  - testbench example [274](#)
  - UDF interface [272](#)
  - with FlexModels [271](#)
  - with FlexModels in testbench [274](#)
  - with VCS [277](#)
- VERA command [277](#)
- vera\_local.dll library [278](#)
- verifySetup
  - error message [181](#)
  - executing [181](#)
- Verilog
  - include pkgs [117](#)
  - slm\_pli.o [27](#)
- Verilog-XL
  - capturing designs [65](#)
  - compiling and simulating [91](#)
  - Concept procedure [68](#)
  - design
    - capture with Concept [67](#)
  - design capture [66](#)
  - design flow [65](#)
  - design flow with SmartModels [66](#)
  - dynamic linking with MemPro [83](#)
  - executable [91](#)
  - save and restore [96](#)
  - simulating and compiling [91](#)
  - simulating using LMTV [75](#)
  - using SmartModel windows with [69](#)
  - using with SmartModels [62](#)
  - with MemPro [80](#)
  - with SmartModels [61](#)
- Version numbers, finding [92](#)
- VHDL generics
  - LMSI\_DELAY\_TYPE [139](#), [154](#)
  - LMSI\_LOG [139](#), [154](#)
  - LMSI\_TIMING\_MEASUREMENT [138](#), [154](#)
  - with Scirocco [138](#)
  - with VSS [153](#)
- VHDL keywords, unacceptable as signal names [195](#)
- VHDL shell, creating for Cyclone [193](#)
- vhdlan command [131](#), [136](#)
- vhdsim command [149](#)
- vhdsim file [150](#)
- ViewLogic Fusion
  - with hardware models [36](#)

Visual C++ [29](#), [44](#)  
vlib command [161](#)  
vsim command [161](#), [165](#)  
VSS  
  VHDL generics [153](#)  
  with FlexModels [147](#)  
  with MemPro models [150](#)  
  with SmartModels [145](#)  
V-System [162](#)  
vsystem.ini file [164](#)

## W

Windows  
  LMTV SmartModel commands [69](#)  
  SmartModel, elements [240](#)  
  SmartModel, tracing instruction  
    execution [238](#)  
  SmartModels, how they work [237](#)  
  SmartModels, with QuickSim II [237](#)  
Word triggering  
  setting [238](#)  
Wrappers  
  SWIFT [106](#)

## Z

-Zp4 switch for VCS [52](#)